



Class F 23
Book G 66
Copyright N^o _____

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT

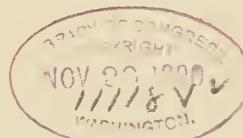
12
542

3/2/3
2 1

THE
Publications of the Prince Society.

Established May 25th, 1858.

SIR FERDINANDO GORGES
AND
HIS PROVINCE OF MAINE.

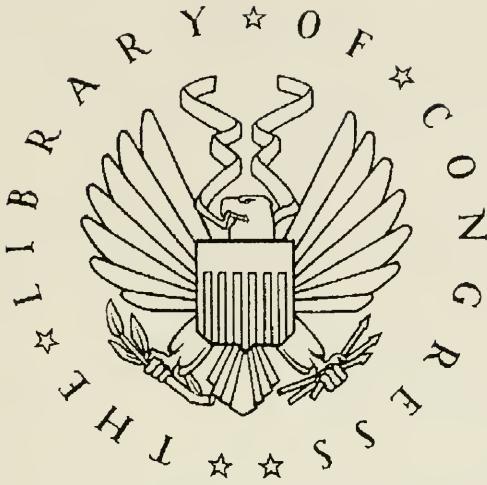


Boston:
PRINTED FOR THE SOCIETY,
BY JOHN WILSON AND SON.

1890.

Monograph

TWO HUNDRED AND FIFTY COPIES.



Fold-out Placeholder

This fold-out is being digitized, and will be inserted at a future date.

part

N OF THE TOW
ereof, with the wor
Seige: A 1643

St Stephens

The River of Limer

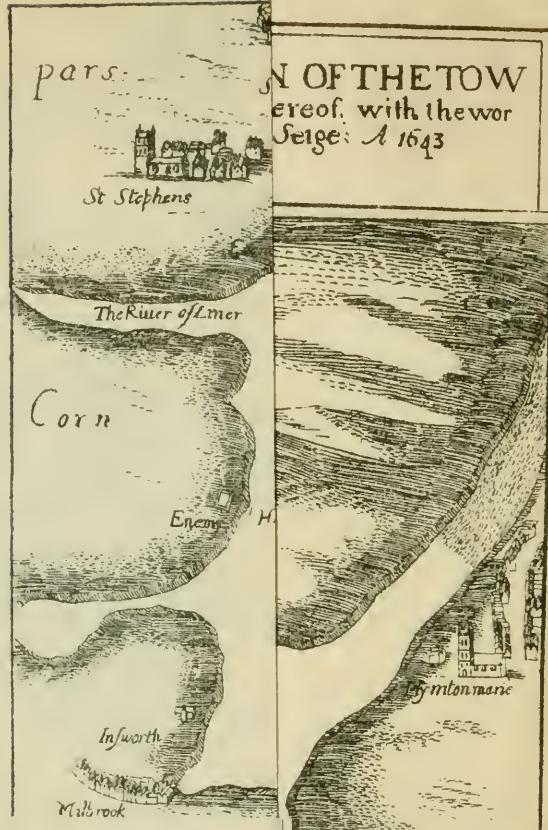
Corn

Enemys H

Insworth

Milbroke

Glynnmarie



SIR FERDINANDO GORGES

AND HIS

PROVINCE OF MAINE.

INCLUDING

THE BRIEF RELATION, THE BRIEF NARRATION, HIS
DEFENCE, THE CHARTER GRANTED TO HIM,
HIS WILL, AND HIS LETTERS.

EDITED WITH A

MEMOIR

AND

HISTORICAL ILLUSTRATIONS

BY

JAMES PHINNEY BAXTER, A.M.
1890

VOL. II.

Boston:

PUBLISHED BY THE PRINCE SOCIETY.

1890.

F23
G66

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1890, by
THE PRINCE SOCIETY,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington.



PREFATORY NOTE.

GWISH to acknowledge my indebtedness to Josiah Pierce, Esq., of London, a fellow-countryman, for carefully prepared copies of title-pages of the Gorges tracts in the British Museum. While preparing my notes on this subject, I made a personal examination of all the copies of the tracts which I could find in London and in this country, in order to settle the question whether all the copies extant included Edward Johnson's work; not that this would be conclusive proof of the position assumed by me in the discussion of the subject, but I thought it might serve the purpose of circumstantial evidence in favor of Gorges.

In speaking of the Journal of the Voyage to Sagadahoc by the Popham colonists, I have not referred to the Rev. B. F. DeCosta's discovery of this important manuscript at Lambeth Palace, for the reason that I possessed a manuscript

copy of the Journal, and had not examined Dr. DeCosta's printed copy of it until this volume was in print. It seems proper, therefore, that I should refer to this seeming neglect to award to Dr. DeCosta the credit which is his due. I also desire to correct the word "brother's," inadvertently used for "kinsman's," in Vol. I. p. 88, second line.

J. P. B.

PORLAND, MAINE,
61 Deering Street.

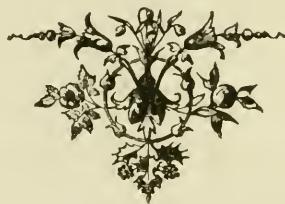




TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
A BRIEFE NARRATION OF THE ORIGINALL UNDERTAKINGS OF THE ADVANCEMENT OF PLANTATIONS INTO THE PARTS OF AMERICA. ESPECIALLY, SHEWING THE BEGINNING, PRO- GRESS, AND CONTINUANCE OF THAT OF NEW-ENGLAND. . .	1-81
A BREEFE ANSWER TO CERTAYNE FALSE, SLANDEROUS, AND IDLE OBJECTIONS MADE AGAYNST S ^R FERD. GORGES, KNIGHTE . .	83-121
CHARTER OF THE PROVINCE OF MAINE	123-148
THE WILL OF SIR FERDINANDO GORGES	149-150
GENEALOGICAL NOTES ON THE FAMILY OF GORGES	151-174
THE LITERARY WORK OF FERDINANDO GORGES	175-185
SKETCH OF THOMAS GORGES	186-190
THE WILL OF THOMAS GORGES	190-192
DOCUMENTS RELATING TO THE PROVINCE OF MAINE.	193-221
THE LETTERS OF SIR FERDINANDO GORGES	223-251
 <hr/>	
INDEX	253-270





LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
MAP OF PLYMOUTH	<i>Frontispiece</i>
MAP OF THE NEW ENGLAND COAST, A.D. 1650	184



A
BRIEFE NARRATION
OF THE
Originall Undertakings
OF THE
ADVANCEMENT
OF
PLANTATIONS
Into the parts of
AMERICA.
Eſpecially,

Shewing the begining, progress
and continuance of that of
New-England.

Written by the right Worſhipfull, Sir *Ferdinando Gorges*
Knight and Governoour of the Fort and Iſland of
Plymouth in *DEVONSHIRE*.

L O N D O N :

Printed by *E. Brudenell*, for *Nath. Brook* at the
Angell in *Corn-hill.* 1658.



CHAPTER I.

OF THE First Seisin Possession AND NAME OF VIRGINIA.



Hat Sir *Humphrey Gilbert*, and Sir *Richard Geenvile*,²⁸⁵ and many others, Noble spirits of our Nation attempted to settle a Plantation in the parts of *America*, in the Reigne of Queen *Elizabeth* is sufficiently published in the painfull collections of Mr. *Hackluit*, together with the variable successes, of those undertakers of whose labour and charge there remained

²⁸⁵ Sir Richard Grenville was a Cornishman, and a relative of Ralegh and Gilbert. He served as a volunteer in the German army against the Turks at the early age of sixteen, and upon his

return to his native country, was sent to Ireland, where he served as a commander. In 1571 he was in Parliament as a representative of Cornwall, and received the honor of Knighthood from the

4 *A Description of New-England.*

mained no other fruit then the Primor seisin and royal possession taken thereof, as of right belonging to the [2] Crown of *England*, giving it the name of *Virginia*, in the memory and Honour of that Virgin Queen, the wonder of her Sex; by whose Authority those attempts took their first life, and dyed not till the actors ended their daies, and their cheife supporters, and advancers tryed with so many fruitlesse attempts and endlesse charge without hope of profit to follow for many ages to come; so that, that attempt had its end, as many others since that of greater hopes and better grounded, but what shall we say?

As

the fair hand of the Virgin Queen. He became warmly interested in the plans of Raleigh and Gilbert for colonizing America, and accompanied, as commander of the fleet of several ships, the first colony sent by Raleigh from Plymouth, on April 9th, 1585, to colonize Virginia. Although in command of a peaceful band of colonists, Grenville could not restrain his military ardor when, touching at the West Indies, he saw two Spanish frigates quietly lying at anchor, and, without stopping to consider the nature of his command, he fell upon them with such fury that they were forced to surrender to him. After this exploit he resumed his voyage, and barely escaping shipwreck upon Cape Fear, as he called the headland which came so near causing the destruction of his fleet, he succeeded in landing his colony successfully at Roanoke late in June. Leaving his colony there, he returned to England, capturing on his way a wealth-laden carrack of Spain; and when he reached the port of Plymouth, on the 18th of September, he was welcomed as a hero. Gathering supplies for his colony, he returned to America, but found that his colonists had taken

advantage of an opportunity to return to England, and had deserted Roanoke but a few weeks before his arrival. Not disengaged, and determined to hold possession of the country, he left fifteen men at Roanoke and returned to England. In 1591 he was made vice-admiral, and in command of five ships attacked a Spanish fleet of fifty-three ships off the Azores. During the unequal battle which followed, the brave Grenville was desperately wounded, but refused to be borne below, and his wounds were dressed upon deck, where he could direct the management of his fleet; but while making terrible havoc in the Spanish fleet, he was wounded the second time by a shot through his body, and this time mortally, which caused the surrender of his little fleet. Thus fell, at the age of fifty-one years, one of the bravest naval commanders which England, always rich in naval heroes, ever produced. Gorges well denominates him and his kinsman Gilbert "noble spirits." Such indeed they were.

As no corrections in spelling have been attempted, the name is left here as in the original edition of the *Narration*, of which this is a counterpart.

As nothing is done but according to the time fore decreed by Gods sacred Providence, so doth he provide wherewith to accomplish the same in the fulnesse of it, but the mirror of Queens being summoned to the possession of a more Glorious Reigne, left her terrestriall Crown to her Successor *James*, the Sixth of *Scotland*, to whom of right it did belong.²⁸⁷

CHAPTER II.

The reasons and meanes of renewing the undertakings of Plantations in America.

THIS great Monarch Gloriously ascending his Throne, ^T being borne to greatnesse above his Ancestors, to whom all submitted as to another *Salamon*, for wisedome and justice,²⁸⁸ as well as for that he brought with him another Crown,

²⁸⁷ The Queen died on the 24th of March, 1603, the last day of the year.

²⁸⁸ Sir Ferdinand employs the pharaoeology of the courtier, in this mention of the royal father of the reigning sovereign, who had bestowed upon him so many favors. The wisdom and justice referred to may be briefly illustrated by the following, selected from many similar anecdotes. It is from a letter of Lord Thomas Howard, a favorite of the King, to Sir John Harrington in 1611.

MY GOOD AND TRUSTY KNIGHT, — If you have good will and good health to perform what I shall commend, you may set forward for courte, whenever it suiteth your own conveniency: the King hath often enquired after you, — He doth wondrously covet learned discourse, of which you can

furnish out ample means; he doth admire good fashion in cloaths, I pray you give good heed hereunto. — In your discouerce you must not dwell too long on one subject, and touch but lightly on religion. Do not of yourself say "This is good or bad" but, "If it were your Majettie's good opinion, I myself should think so and so." — I will advise one thing: — the roan jennet, whereon the King rideth every day, must not be forgotten to be praised; and the good furniture above all, what lost a great man much notice the other day. A noble did come in suit of a place, and saw the King mounting the roan; delivered his petition, which was heeded and read, but no answere was given. The noble departed, and came to courte the nexte day, and got no answere again. The Lord Treasurer was then prestid to move the King's pleasure touching the petition. When the King was asked for answere thereto,

6 *A Description of New-England.*

Crown, whereby those Kingdomes that had so long contended for rights and liberties, perhaps oft times pretended rather to satisfie their present purposes, then that justice required it; But such is the frailty of humane nature as not

[3] to be content with what we possesse, but strives by all
means to enthrall the weaker that is necessitated to
prevent the worst, though by such means sometimes to
their greater ruine; With this Union there was also a generall peace concluded between the State, and the King of *Spaine*, the then onely enemy of our Nation and Religion, whereby our Men of war by Sea and Land were left destitute of all hope of imployment under their owne Prince; And therefore there was liberty given to them (for preventing other evils) to be entertained as Mercenaries under what Prince or State they pleased; A liberty granted upon shew of reason, yet of a dangerous consequence, when our friends and Allyes that had long travelled with us in one and the same quarrell, should now finde our fwordes sharpened as well against, as for them; Howsoever reason of State approved thereof, the World forbore not to censure it as their affections led them, others grew jealous what might be the issue, especially when it was found that by such liberty the fword was put into their hands, the Law had prohibited them the use;²⁸⁹ Some there were not liking

to

thereto, he said, in some wrath, "Shall a King give heed to a dirty paper, when a beggar noteth not his gilt stirrops?" Now it fell out, that the King had new furniture when the noble saw him in the courte-yard; but he was overcharged with confuson, and passed by admiring the dressing of the horse. Thus, good knight, our noble failed in his suit.

²⁸⁹ So many had been bred to the trade of war, which was regarded by the people and even by political economists as being quite as legitimate as any other occupation, that a state of peace was looked upon in England as a public calamity, since it caused so many to be thrown out of employment. By the peace

to be servants to forreigne States, thought it better became them to put in practice the reviving resoluation of those free Spirits, that rather chose to spend themselves in seeking a new World, then servilely to be hired but as Slaughterers in the quarrels of Strangers; This resoluation being stronger then their meanes to put it into execution, they were forced to let it rest as a dreame, till God should give the meanes to stir up the inclination of such a power able to bring it to life; And so it pleased our great God that there hapned to come into the harbour of *Plymouth* (where I then commanded) one Captain *Waymouth*²⁹⁰ that had been employed by the Lord *Arundell* of *Warder*²⁹¹ for the dis-
covery of the North-west paſſage.

But

peace, which Gorges deplores, thouſands were caſt upon their own reſources for a living, and, having been taught nothing but the art of pillage, many ſought employmen t under foreign princes, who were engaged in war, while many others turned their attention to piracy and robbery, making it extremely dangerous to travel in or about England, by ſea or land. This condition of affairs it became neceſſary to meet by a ſummary, and what often appears to the caſual reader to be a cruel, application of the criminal law.

²⁹⁰ Captain George Waymouth, already noticed, and concerning whom *vide Rosier's Relation of Waymouth's Voyage*, by Henry S. Burrage, D.D., Portland, Maine, 1887.

²⁹¹ Sir Thomas Arundel was a Ro- man Catholic nobleman, and was created a Count of the Holy Roman Empire on the 14th of December, 1595, by the Emperor Rodolph II. as a reward for gallantry againſt the Turks, while ſerv- ing in Hungary as a volunteer in the Imperial army. Among other brave

acts he ſtormed the Water Tower, near Strigonium, and bore away the banner of the enemy with his own hand. Upon his return to England he met with a cold reception from Elizabeth on account of his acceptance of a foreign title, and by her orders was thrown into priſon. After a lengthy correspondence between the Emperor and the Queen, and an humble "Apologie for accepting the Honour of *Comes Imperij*," he was pardoned. In addition to the title of Count of the Holy Roman Empire, which was hereditary and is enjoyed by the head of the family at the preſent day, he had beftowed upon him by the English crown, on May 4th, 1605, the title of Baron of Wardour. He was intereſted in diſcovery and colonization in connection with his father-in-law the Earl of Southampton, Sir Ferdinand Gorges, and others. He died November 7th, 1639. Gorges ſuppoſes Waymouth to have been employed by Arundel for the diſcovery of the north-west paſſage, that having been made the oſtentible object of his voyage in order

8 *A Description of New-England.*

But falling short of his Course, hapned into a River on the Coast of *America*, called *Pemmaquid*,²⁹² from whence he brought five of the Natives, three of whose names were *Manida*, *Skettwarroes*, and *Tasquantum*,²⁹³ whom I feized upon; they were all of one Nation, but of severall parts, and severall Families; This accident must be acknowledged the meanes under God of putting on foote, and giving life to all our Plantations, as by the ensuing discourse will manifestly appeare.

[4]

C H A P T E R III.

Of the use I made of the Natives.

After I had those people sometimes in my Custody, I observed in them an inclination to follow the example of the better sort; And in all their carriages manifest shewes
of

order to keep the true object of it from public knowledge. This was more easily accomplished in this case, since Waymouth had already been employed by the East India Company in a voyage to discouer the northwest passage, an account of which undertaking may be found in *Narratives of Voyages towards the North West*, by Thomas Randall, Esq., London, 1849, pp. 51-71, 238 et passim. The correspondence between the Emperor and the Queen relating to Arundel may be found in Rymer's *Fœdera*, Tom. XVI. p. 284, and Arundel's *Apologie*, in *Desiderata Curiosa*, Vol. II. p. 280.

²⁹² This point of land on the western side of the entrance to the George's River, called by the French *Pemquit*, and from the earliest date by the English *Pemaquid*, at one time promised to

be the centre of English colonial power in New England. According to the Rev. Paul Coffin, the name signifies, in the aboriginal tongue, "a point of land running into the sea." *Vide Collections of the Maine Historical Society*, Vol. IV. p 397.

²⁹³ Roifer calls the first of these Indians *Maneddo* and the second *Skicowaros*, and denominates them gentlemen, by which he means that they were persons of some importance among their people, probably petty chiefs or sachems; but he does not, as before stated, mention *Tisquantum*. Gorges may therefore be in error in stating that *Tisquantum* was one of Waymouth's captives. He certainly is in error in making him of the same tribe as the others, since we know that he belonged to Cape Cod.

of great civility farre from the rudenesse of our common people; And the longer I converfed with them, the better hope they gave me of those parts where they did inhabit, as proper for our uses, especially when I found what goodly Rivers, stately Islands, and safe harbours those parts abounded with, being the speciall marks I levelled at as the onely want our Nation met with in all their Navigations along that Coast, and having kept them full three yeares, I made them able to set me downe what great Rivers ran up into the Land, what Men of note were feated on them, what power they were of, how allyed, what enemies they had, and the like of which in his proper place.

C H A P T E R IV.

Captain Henry Challoung sent to make his residence in the Countrey till fupplyes came.

THOSE credible informations the Natives had given me [5] of the condition and state of their Countrey, made me send away a Ship furnished with Men and all necessaries, provisions convenient for the service intended²⁹⁴ under the command of Captain *Henry Challoung*, a gentleman of a good Family, industrious, and of fair condition, to whom I gave such directions and instructions for his better direction as I knew proper for his use, and my satisfaction, being grounded upon the information I had of the Natives, fending

²⁹⁴ This was in August, 1606. More particulars concerning this voyage of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, *polyea*.

10 *A Description of New-England.*

fending two of them with him to aver the same, Binding both the Captain his Master, and company strictly to follow it; Or to expect the miscarriage of the Voyage to be laid unto their Charge, Commanding them by all meanes to keep the northerly gage, as high as Cape Britton, till they had discovered the Maine, and then to beate it up to the Southward, as the Coast tended, till they found by the Natives they were neer the place they were assignd unto; Though this were a direction contrary to the opinion of our best Sea-men of these times; yet I knew many reasons perswading me thereunto, as well as for that I understood the Natives themselves to be exact Pilots for that Coast, having been accustomed to frequent the same, both as Fishermen and in passing along the shoare to seek their enemies, that dwelt to the Northward of them; But it is not in the wit of Man to prevent the providence of the most High.

For this Captain being some 100 leagues of the Island of *Canara*, fell sick of a Feaver, and the windes being Westerly, his company shaped their course for the *Indies*, and coming to *St. John De Porteriko*, the Captain himselfe went a shoare for the recovery of his health, whiles the Company took in water, and such other provision as they had present use of, expending some time there, hunting after such things as best pleased themselves; That ended, they set their course to fall with their owne height they were directed unto; By which meanes they met the *Spanish* Fleet that came from *Havana*, by whom they were taken and carried into *Spaine*, where their Ship and goods were confiscate, themselves made Prisoners, the voyage overthrowne, and both my Natives

tives lost;²⁹⁵ This the gaine of their breach of Order, which afterwards obſerved, brought all our Shippes to their desired Ports; The affliction of the Captain and his Company [6] put the Lord Chief Justice *Popham* to charge, and myfelfe to trouble in procuring their liberties, which was not fuddainly obtained.

CHAPTER V.

The Lord Chief Justice dispatching Captaine Prin from Bristoll for the supply of Captaine Chalbounce.

SHortly upon my ſending away of Captaine *Chalbounce*, it pleased the Lord Chiefe Justice according to his promise to dispatch Captain *Prin* from *Bristol*, with hope to have found Captaine *Chalbounce*, where by his instructions he was affigned, who obſerving the fame, happily arrived there, but not hearing by any meanes what became of him, after he had made a perfect diſcovery of all those Rivers and Harbours he was informed of by his instructions, (the ſeafon of the yeare requiring his return) brings with him the moſt exact diſcovery of that Coast that ever came to my hands ſince, and indeed he was the beſt able to perorme it of any I met withall to this preſent, which with his relation of the Country, wrought ſuch an impreſſion in the Lord Chiefe Justice, and us all that were his associates, that (notwithſtanding our firſt diſaſter) we fet up our reſolutions to follow it with effect, and that upon better grounds, for as yet, our authority was but in motion.

CHAP. VI.

²⁹⁵ "Both my Natives;" yet he has just ſpoken of *three*. In the *Briefe Relation, anteā*, he tells us there were but two, which is probably correct, and calls them *Maneday* and *Aſſecomet*.

Of his Lordships care in procuring his MAJESTIES Authority for settling two COLONIES.

IN this Interim his Lordship failed not to interest many of the Lords and others to be Petitioners to his MAJESTY for his Royall Authority, for settling two Plantations upon the coasts of *America*, by the names of the *First* and *Second* Colonie; the first to be undertaken by certaine Noble Men, Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants in and about the City of *London*; the seconnd by certaine Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants in the western parts: This being obtained, theirs of *London* made a very hopefull entrance into their designe, fending away under the command of Sir *Thomas Gates*,²⁹⁶ Sir *George Summers*,²⁹⁷ and many other Gentlemen of quality, a very great and hopefull Plantation

to

²⁹⁶ Sir Thomas Gates was at this time in the service of the United Neth-
erlands, and in command of a body of
Engligh soldiers who had entered foreign
service on account of the peace then
existing between England and other
powers. He was granted a year's ab-
fence by the States General on April
24th, 1608, and his pay continued dur-
ing his absence. The fleet failed from
Plymouth on the first day of June, 1609.
On a subsequent voyage to America, Sir
Thomas was so unfortunate as to lose
his wife, who had accompanied him to
the New World with his two daugh-
ters, Mary and Elizabeth.

²⁹⁷ Sir George Somers, when ap-
pointed Admiral of Virginia, to reside
in and govern the Colony, was a mem-

ber of Parliament and enjoying the
luxury and ease of a wealthy English
gentleman; but, as it was said of him in
another instance, "the good old gentle-
man, out of his love and zeal not motion-
ing but most cheerfully and resolu-
tely," left the comforts of his ancestral
home, to endure the hardships attend-
ant upon founding a new state, that
he might advance the power and glory
of his country. The early annals of
Virginia tell us of his trials and suffer-
ings, which in 1610 ended in his death
in the Bermudas. His body was em-
balmed and, after being borne across the
sea, was entombed with military honors
at Whitchurch in Dorsetshire, where he
had been wont to worship in his prof-
perous days.

to reposesse the parts of *Virginia*, Sir *Thomas Gates* happily arrived in the Bay of *Jessepiock*,²⁹⁸ in which navigation Sir *George Summers* unhappily cast away his Ship upon the Islands of *Bermathae*s, since called the *Summer Islands*, in memory of him that deserved the honour for the great paines, care, and industry he used out of the carkasse of his wracked Ship, to build a New Barque sufficient for the transportation of himselfe, distressed company, and provision to finde out Sir *Thomas Gates* who timely arrived to the wonder of the rest of his consorts.

[8]

CHAPTER VII.

The dispatch of the first Plantation, for the second Colonie sent from Plymouth.

BY the same Authority all things fully agreed upon between both the Colonies the Lord cheife justice his friends and associates of the West Country, sent from *Plymouth* Captain *Popham* as president for that imployment with Captain *Rawley Gilbert*, and divers other Gentlemen of note in three saile of ships²⁹⁹ with 100. land-men, for the feizing such a place as they were directed unto by the counsell of that Colonie, who departed from the coast of *England* the one and thirtieth day of *May, Anno 1607.* and arrived at their Rendezvouz the 8th of *August* following; as soone as the President had taken notice of the place, and given order for landing the provisions, he dispatcht away Captain *Gilbert*

²⁹⁸ The Chesapeake, the largest bay on the coast of the United States. as there were but two ships, namely, the *Mary and John* and the *Gift of God*.

²⁹⁹ This may have been a misprint,

Gilbert with *Skitwarres* his guide for the through discov-
ery of the rivers and habitations of the Natives, by whom
he was brought to severall of them where he found civill
entertainment, and kind respects far from brutifh or Savage
natures, so as they suddainely became familiar friends, es-
pecially by the meanes of *Dehamda*, and *Skitwarrers*, who
had been in *England*, *Dehamda* being fent by the Lord
cheife Justice with Captain *Prin* and *Skitwarres* by me in
company,³⁰⁰ so as the President was earnestly intreated by
Saffenow, *Aberemet*, and others the principall *Sagamores* (as
they call their great Lords) to go to the *Bashabas*, who it
seemes was their King, and held a State agreeable, expect-
ing that all ftrangers should have their addrefse to him, not
he to them.³⁰¹

[9] To whom the president would have gone after sev-
erall invitations, but was hindred by crosse winds and
foul weather, so as he was forced to return back, without
making good what he had promised, much to the greife
of those *Sagamores*, that were to attend him, the *Bashabas*
notwithstanding

³⁰⁰ These natives are not alluded to in either of the accounts of Martin Pring's voyage, which shows us how carelesly these narratives were written; indeed, the indefiniteness with which early writers outlined events, and the careles manner in which they omitted important details, perplex the seeker for historic truth to a degree sometimes painful. From this statement it would appear that Dehamda, elsewhere called Tahanedo, but more properly Ntahanada, and Skett-warroes, having been fent with Pring to New England, and having returned home with him, had both accompanied the Popham Colony to the New World. Such, however, according to Strachey, is not the fact, as Ntahanada was left

with his people when Pring returned to England, and, when the Popham colony arrived at the Sagadahoc with Skett-warroes, was in command of his tribe. When one knows this, it is not difficult to reconcile the ambiguous statement of Gorges with the fact, as in other similar cases.

³⁰¹ If Sir Ferdinando Gorges had not used the word *the* before *Bashabas*, or as elsewhere spelt by him *Bashaba*, we should have been spared much erroneous writing. The successor of this chief was doubtless the *Saffenow* here mentioned, called by Champlain *Safinou* and *Anassou* in the same chapter, and by Lefcarbot and Biard *Asticou*.

notwithstanding hearing of his misfortune, sent his own Son to visit him, and to beat a trade with him for furrs. How it succeeded, I could not understand, for that the ships were to be dispatched away for *England*, the Winter being already come; for it was the 15. day of *December* before they set saile to return, who brought with them the successe of what had past in that imployment, which so soon as it came to the Lord cheife justice hands, he gave out order to the Councell for sending them back with supplies necessary.³⁰²

CHAPTER VIII.

*The sending supplies to the Colonie, and the unhappy death
of the Lord cheife justice before their departure.*

THE supplies being furnished and all things ready onely attending for a faire wind, which hapned not before the news of the chiefe justice death was posted to them³⁰³ to be transported to the discomfort of the poor Planters, but the ships arriving there in good time,³⁰⁴ was a great refreshing to those that had had their store-house and most of their provisions burnt the Winter before.

Besides

³⁰² As already stated, this *Narration* was written by Gorges many years after the occurrence of the events spoken of; hence, as might be reaonably expected, there are obscurities and errors to be frequently found in it. His account of the return of the ships has hitherto misled his readers, and doubt has been thrown, by this statement relative to Chief Justice Popham, upon the date of

that jurist's death, which occurred many months before the return of the first ship from the Sagadahoc. Had Sir Ferdinando said, "Sir Francis Popham's," instead of "the Lord cheife justice," it would have saved his readers much perplexing research and discussion.

³⁰³ *Vide ante*, Vol. I. p. 87.

³⁰⁴ *Vide ante*, Vol. I. p. 88.

Besides that they were strangely perplexed with the great and unseasonable cold they suffered with that extremity, as the like hath not been heard of since, and it seemes, was univerfall, it being the same yeare, that our *Thames* were so lockt up that they built their boates upon it, and [10] sould provisions of severall sorts to those that delighted in the Novelties of the times, but the miseries they had past, were nothing to that they suffered by the disasterous news they received of the death of the Lord cheif justice, that fuddainely followed the death of their President,³⁰⁵ but the latter was not so strange, in that he was well stricken in years before he went, and had long been an infirme man. Howsoever heartned by hopes, willing he was to dye in acting something that might be serviceable to God, and honourable to his Country, but that of the death of the cheife justice was such a corrosive to all, as struck them with despaire of future remedy, and it was the more augmented, when they heard of the Sir *John Gilbert*,³⁰⁶ Elder brother of *Ralph Gilbert* that was then their President, a man worthy to be beloved of them all for his industry, and care for their well being;³⁰⁷ The President was to return to

³⁰⁵ He died on February 5th, 1607, and Gorges says that the news of the death of the Lord Chief Justice suddenly followed. This is doubtless correct, as the colonists must have received the startling news of their patron's death by the first of the three ships sent with provisions to the Colony.

³⁰⁶ This statement, which has been fo misunderstood, takes proper shape when read with a true knowledge of the facts in mind. The news of Sir John Gilbert's death, it is quite plain, reached

them after the news of the death of the Lord Chief Justice, and we know that Sir John Gilbert's death did not occur until July 5th, 1608, more than twelve months after the death of the former; hence the later news reached them only when the last ship despatched by Gorges to the relief of the Colony arrived in the autumn of 1608.

³⁰⁷ This is quite a different estimate of Raleigh Gilbert from that given of him by Sir Ferdinando Gorges to Sir Robert Cecil on December 3d, 1607, when

to settle the state his Brother had left him, upon which all resolved to quit the place, and with one consent to away, by which means all our former hopes wer frozen to death, though Sir *Francis Popham* could not so give it over, but continued to send thither severall years after in hope of better fortunes, but found it fruitleſſe, and was necessitated at last to fit down with the losſe he had already undergone.

CHAPTER IX.

*My resolution not to abandon the prosecution of the busineſſe,
in my opinion ſo well grounded.*

Although I were interested in all those misfortunes, and [11] found it wholly given over by the body of the adventurers, aswell for that they had lost the principall ſupport of the deſigne, as also that the Country it ſelue was branded by the returne of the Plantation, as being over cold, and in reſpect of that, not habitable by our Nation.

Besides, they understood it to be a taske too great for particular persons to undertake, though the Country it ſelue, the Rivers, Havens, Harbours, upon that coast might in time prove profitable to us.

These laſt acknowledgements bound me confidently to prosecute my firſt resolution, not doubting but *G O D* would effect that which Man deſpaired of, as for thoſe reaſons, the cauſes

when the facts relating to Gilbert's conneſtion with the Colony were freſh in mind. We can only reconcile this diſcrepancy in the two eſtimates by af-

fuming that Sir Ferdinand had been brought, by a better acquaintance with the man, to correct his firſt opinion of him.

18 *A Description of New-England.*

causes of others discouragements, the first onely was given to me, in that I had lost so Noble a Friend, and my Nation so worthy a Subject. As for the coldnesse of the Clyme, I had had too much experience in the World to be frighted with such a blast, as knowing many great Kingdomes and large Territories more northerly seated, and by many degrees colder than the Clyme from whence they came, yet plentifullly inhabited, and divers of them stored with no better commodities from Trade and Commerce than those parts afforded, if like Industry, Art, and Labour be used, for the last I had no reason greatly to despaire of meanes when *G O D* should be pleased by our ordinary frequenting that Country, to make it appeare, it would yeild both profit and content to as many as aimed thereat, these being truly (for the most part) the motives that all men labour, howsoever otherwise adjoyned with faire colours and goodly shadous.

[12]

C H A P T E R X.

A resolution to put new life into that scattered and lacerated Body.

FInding I could no longer be seconded by others, I became an owner of a Ship my selfe fit for that imployment, and under colour of fishing and trade, I got a Master and company for her, to which I sent *Vines*³⁰⁸ and others my owne servants with their provision for trade and discovery, appointing them to leave the Ship and Ships Company for to follow their businesse in the usuall place, (for I knew they would

³⁰⁸ Richard Vines, concerning whom *vide antea*, note 177.

would not be drawn to seek by any meanes) by these and the help of those Natives formerly sent over, I came to be truly informed of so much as gave me assurance that in time I should want no undertakers, though as yet I was forced to hire Men to stay there the Winter Quarter at extream rates, and not without danger, for that the War had consumed the Bashaba,³⁰⁹ and the most of the great Sagamores, with such Men of action as followed them, and thoſe that remained were fore afflicted with the Plague, for that the Country was in a manner left void of Inhabitants; Notwithstanding, *Vines* and the rest with him that lay in the Cabbins with thoſe People that dyed ſome more, ſome leſſe, mightily, (bleffed be *G O D* for it) not one of them ever felt their heads to ake while they stayed there; and this courſe I held ſome years together, but nothing to my private profit, for what I got one way I spent another, ſo that I began to grow weary of that buſineſſe as not for my turne till better times.

[13]

CHAPTER XI.

Captain Harles comming to me with a new propositiōn of other hopes.

Wile I was labouring by what meanes I might best continue life in my languishing hopes, there comes one

³⁰⁹ It ſhould be noted that Lefcarbot, alſo ſpeaks of the death of Besſabes in battle, and ſays that his ſucceſſor was Aſticou, a chief whom we hear of later at Mount Dēſert in connektion with the miſſion of Fathers Biard and Maffe. The word *Aſticou*, we are told by Champlain ſignifies boiler. The Indians delighted

in names which ſuggested ſome apparent characteristic, or commemorated ſome personal achievement or event; hence it is probable that this chief was named, in accordancē with the custom of his people, after ſome prominent trait of character which he poſſeſſed.

20 *A Description of New-England.*

one Captain *Henry Harley*³¹⁰ unto me, bringing with him a Native of the Island of *Capawick*,³¹¹ a place seated to the Southward of *Cape Codd* whose name was *Epenewe* a person of a goodly stature, strong and well proportioned, this man was taken upon the main with some twenty nine others by a ship of *London* that endeavoured to sell them for slaves in *Spaine*, but being understood that they were *Americans*, and found to be unapt for their uses, they would not meddle with them, this being one of them they refused, wherein they exprest more worth then those that brought them to the market, who could not but know that our Nation was at that time in travaile for setling of Christian Colonies upon that continent, it being an act much tending to our prejudice, when we came into that part of the Countries, as it shall further appeare; how Captaine *Harley* came to be possessed of this *Savage*, I know not, but I understood by others how he had been shewed in *London* for a wonder,³¹² it is true (as I have said) he was a goodly man of a brave aspect,

³¹⁰ This man, Gorges says further on in the *Narration*, was one of the Popham Colony; and as Captain Edward Harlow happened to be prominent in that Colony, it has been inferred by writers hitherto that Gorges made a mistake in the name of the man who brought Epenow to him, and that he should have written, instead of "Henry Harley," "Edward Harlow." But Gorges would hardly have made such an error, since Captain Henry Haley, Harley, or Hawley must have been well known to him at the time this *Narration* was written, as he had been for some years Governor of Barbadoes, and had been at loggerheads with the Earl of Carlisle, one of Gorges' friends and associates. We may therefore be certain

that Henry Harley was one of the Popham Colony as well as Edward Harlow.

³¹¹ Now known as Martha's Vineyard.

³¹² If we may credit Shakespeare, Indians were considered an interesting spectacle in London in his time. Thus in *The Tempest* (Act II. Sc. 2), first acted before Prince Charles, the Lady Elizabeth, and the Prince Palatine in 1613, Trinculo says:

" Were I in England now (as once I was), and had but this fish painted, not a holiday fool there but would give a piece of silver: there would this monster make a man; any strange beast there makes a man! When they will not give a doit to relieve a lame beggar, they will lay out ten to see a dead Indian."

aspect, stout and sober in his demeanor, and had learned so much *English* as to bid those that wondred at him, welcome, welcome, this being the last and best use they could make of him, that was now growne out of the peoples wonder, the Captain, falling further into his familiarity, found him to be of acquaintance and friendship with those subiect to the

[14] *Bashaba*, whom the Captain well knew, being himselfe justice, and by that means understood much of his language, found out the place of his birth, nature of the Country, their severall kinds of commodities, and the like, by which he conceived great hope that good might be made of him, if meanes could be found for his imployment, but finding adventurers of that kind were worne out of date; after so many faylings, and so soone upon the return of our late Colony, but the Gentleman calling to mind my aptnesse to designes of that nature, lays up his rest to discover his greatest secrets to me, by whom had hoped to rise or fall in this action, after he had spoken with me, and that I had seen his *Savage*, though I had some reasoun to beleive the Gentleman in what he told me, yet I thought it not amisfe to take some time before I undertook a businesse (as I thought) so improbable in some particulars, but yet I doubted not, my resolution being such (as is said) I might make some use of his service; And therefore wisht him to leave him with me, giving him my word, that when I saw my time to fend againe to those parts, he should have notice of it, and I would be glad to accept of his service, and that with as great kindnesse as he freely offered it, in the meane time, he might be pleased to take his owne course.

CHAPTER XII.

The reasons of my undertaking the imployment for the Island of Capawick.

AT the time this new *Savage* came unto me, I had recovered *Affacumet*, one of the Natives I sent with Captain *Chalownes* in his unhappy imployment, with whom

I lodged *Epenaw*, who at the first hardly understood one [15] the others speech, till after a while; I perceived the difference was no more then that, as ours is betweene the Northern and Southerne people, so that I was a little eased in the use I made of my old servant whom I ingaged to give account of what he learned by conference between themselves, and he as faithfully performed it; Being fully satisfied of what he was able to say, and the time of making ready, drawing on, following my pretended designes; I thought it became me to acquaint the thrice honoured Lord of *South-Hampton*³¹³ with it, for that I knew the Captain

had

³¹³ Henry Wriothesley, the third Earl of Southampton, was a man of literary tastes, and was reckoned among the friends and admirers of Shakespeare. He largely contributed to the expedition of Gofnold in 1602, and from that time until his death strove to promote the colonization of America. After the failure of the Popham Colony, his attention was turned to Virginia, and in 1620 he accepted the office of Treasurer of the Virginia Company of London. A curious letter, bearing date December 15th, 1609, written by him to Secretary Cecil, is preserved in the office of the Public Records, which reveals, as so

many letters of the time reveal, the childishnes of James. In this letter Southampton speaks of a conversation with James relative to Virginia, in which reference had been made to some flying squirrels, which had been recently brought to England; and he tells Cecil, that the King very earnestly desired to know if none had been reserved for him, and declared that he knew that the powerful minister would get one for him. Finding the King's heart set upon the matter, Southampton hastened to write this letter, telling the care-burdened Cecil that he would not trouble him in such a matter, if Cecil himself did not

had some relation to his Lordship, and I not willing in those daies, to undertake any matter extraordinary without his Lordships advice, who approved of it so well that he adventured 100*l.* in that imployment, and his Lordship being at that time Commander of the Isle of *Wight*, where the Captain had his abiding under his Lordship, who out of his noblenesse was pleased to furnish me with some land Soldiers, and to command to me a grave Gentleman, one Captain *Hobson*, who was willing to go that voyage, and to adventure 100*l.* himselfe. To him I gave the command of the Ship, all things being ready, and the company came together, attending but for a faire winde; they set saile in *June*, in *Anno 1614.* being fully instructed how to demeane themselves in every kind, carrying with them *Epenow*, *Affacomet*, and *Wanape*, another Native of those parts sent me out of the Isle of *Wight* for my better information in the parts of the Country of his knowledge, when as it pleased God that they were arrived upon the coast they were Pilotted from place to place, by the Natives themselves, as well as their hearts could desire; And comming to the Harbour

where

not know how the King was “affected by such toys.” After the dissolution of the Virginia Company, Southampton, accompanied by one of his sons, went to the Netherlands, where he took command of an English regiment. While stationed near Bergen-op-Zoom, in the autumn of 1624, a fatal disease broke out in the English camp, to which many of the troops fell victims, and among them the Earl and his eldest son, whose bodies were transported to England, and amid great sorrow buried at Litchfield, in the county of Southampton, the country-seat of the Earl. Although the

title became extinct in his second son in 1667, the memory of “the thrice-honored” Earl is perpetuated in a noble charity founded by him in Litchfield, not long before his death, for the education of girls, twelve being the number now maintained in the establishment. Nothing but the ruins of Palace House, his former favorite residence, now remain. This house was built by him on the site and from the ruins of an ancient abbey founded in 1231. It was in this house that Charles I. was concealed after his escape from Hampton Court in 1647.

where *Epenow* was to make good his undertaking,³¹⁴ the principall inhabitants of the place came aboard, some of them being his Brothers, others his near Couzens, who after they had communed together and were kindly entertained by the Captain, departed in their Cannowes, promising the next morning to come aboard again, and bring some trade

[16] with them: But *Epenow* privately (as it appeared) had contracted with his friends, how he might make his escape without performing what he had undertaken, being in truth no more then he had told me he was to do though with losse of his life, for otherwise if it were found that he had discovered the secrets of his Country, he was sure to have his braines knockt out as soone as he came a shoar, for that cause I gave the Captaine strict charge to endeavour by all meanes to prevent his escapeing from them, and for the more surety, I gave order to have three Gentlemen of my owne kinred to be ever at hand with him, cloathing him with long garments, fitly to be laid hold on, if occasion should require; Notwithstanding all this, his friends being all come at the time appointed with twenty Cannows, and lying at a certaine distiance with their Bows ready, the Captaine calles to them to come aboard, but they not moving, he speakes to *Epenow* to come unto him, where he was in the fore castle of the Ship, he being then in the waft of the Ship between two of the Gentlemen that had him in gard, start, suddainly from them, and comming to the Captaine, calls to his friends in *English* to come aboard, in the interim flips himselfe over board, and although he were taken hold
of

³¹⁴ Which was to conduct the adventurers to a gold mine.

of by one of the company, yet being a strong and heavy Man, could not be stayed, and was no sooner in the water, but the Natives sent such a showre of arrowes, and came withall desperately so neer the Ship, that they carryed him away in despight of all the Musquetteers aboard, who were for the number as good as our nation did afford; And thus were my hopes of that particular made void and frustrate, and they returned without doing more, though otherwise ordered how to have spent that summer to good purpose; but such are the fruits to be looked for, by employing men Men more zealous of gain than frought with experience how to make it.

[17]

CHAPTER XIII.

Sir Richard Hakings undertook by authority from the Council of the second Colonie to trie what service he could do them as President for that yeare.

Having received his Commission and Instructions, he departed in October 1615, and spent the time of his being in those parts in searching of the Country, and finding out the commodities thereof, but the war was at the height and the principall Natives almost destroyed,³¹⁵ so that his observation

³¹⁵ A frenzy of destruction had at this time feized upon the savage tribes from the seaboard to the great lakes. In the Northwest the Ottawas and Hurons, aided by Champlain, were fiercely contending with the ferocious Iroquois; while along the Atlantic seaboard the New England tribes were engaged in an equally deadly conflict. This de- vastating war and the plague which followed have ever been regarded as means employed by Providence in preparing the way for Christian colonization. Even King James embodied this belief in the Grand Plymouth Patent, so called, in the following words, that he had "been given certainly to knowe, that within these late Yeares, there

observation could not be such as could give account of any new matter, more than formerly had been received, from thence he past along the coast to *Virginia*, & stay'd there some time, in expectation of what he could not be satisfied in, so took his next course for *Spain*, to make the best of such commodities he had got together, as he coasted from place to place having sent his Ship laden with Fish to the Market before, and this was all that was done by any of us that yeare.

CHAPTER XIV.

Of the sending of Captaine Rocraft to meeete with Captaine Dermor in NEW-ENGLAND.

ABOUT this time I received letters from Captaine *Dermor* out of *New-England*, giving me to understand that there was one of my Savages sent into those parts [18] brought from *Malago* in a Ship of *Bristol*, acquainting me with the meanes I might recover him, which I followed and had him sent me, who was after employed with others in the voyage with Captaine *Hobson* sent to *Capawike* as

there hath by God's Visitation, raigned a wonderfull Plague, together with many horrible Slaughters and Murthers, committed amongst the Sauages and brutish People there, heeretofore inhabiting, in a Manner to the utter Destruction, Devastacion and Depopulacion of that whole Territorye, so that there is not left for many Leagues together in a Manner, any that doe claime or chalenge, any Kind of Interests therein,— whereby We in our Judgment are per-

suaded and satisfied that the appointed Time is come in which Almighty God in his great Goodnes and Bountie towards Us and our People hath thought fitt and determined, that those large and goodly Territoryes, deserted as it were by their naturall Inhabitants, should be possessed and enjoyed by such of our Subjects and People as heeretofore have and hereafter shall by his Mercie and Favour, and by his Powerfull Arme, be directed and conducted thither."

as is above-said,³¹⁶ by this Savage Captaine *Dermor* understood so much of the state of his Country, as drew his affections wholly to follow his hopes that way, to which purpose he writes, that if I pleased to send a Commission to meeke him in *New-England*, he would endeavour to come from the *New-found Land* to receive it, and to observe such other instructions as I pleased to give him, whereupon the next season I sent Captaine *Rocraft* with a company I had of purpose hired for the service. At his arrivall upon the coast he met with a small Barque of *Deepe*, which he seized upon according to such liberties as was granted unto him in such cases, notwithstanding, the poore *French-Man* being of our Religion, I was easily perswaded upon his petition to give content for his losse, although it proved much to dammage afterwards, for Captaine *Rocraft* being now shipp'd and furnished with all things necessary, left the Coast contrary to my directions, and went to *Virginia*, where he had formerly dwelt, and there falling into company with some of his old acquaintance, a quarrell happened between him and another, so that before he could get away he was flaine, by which accident the Barque was left at random, (the most part of the company being on shoar) a storme arising, she was cast away, and all her provisions lost, something was saved but nothing ever came to my hands.

CHAP. XV.

³¹⁶ This was Tisquantum, whom Gor- ges confounds with Assacomet, one of the natives sent with Challons, whom he had also recovered from captivity and sent to the coast of New England with Hobson five years before this date.

Of my imployment of Captain Dormer after his faylings to come from the New-found land to New-England.

Captain *Dormer* being disappointed of his meanes to come from *New-found-land*, to *New-England*, took shipping for *England*; and came to me at *Plymouth* where I gave him an account of what I had done, and he me, what his hopes were, to be able to do me service (if I pleased) to employ him, hereupon I conferred his informations, together with mine owne I received by severall wayes, and found them to agree in Many the particulars of highest consequence and best considerations, whereupon I dispatched him away with the company he had gotten together, as fast as my owne Ship could be made ready for her ordinary imployment, sending with him what he thought necessary, hoping to have met Captaine *Rocraft*, where he was assigned to attend till he received further directions from me, but at the Ships arrivall they found Captain *Rocraft* gone for *Virginia*, with all his company in the Barque he had taken, of which before Captaine *Dormer* arriving, and seeing *Rocraft* gon, was much perplexed, yet so resolved he was, that he ceased not to follow his designe with the Men and Meanes which I had sent him, and so shaped his course from *Sagadahock* in 44 degrees to *Capawike* being in 41 and 36 minutes, sending me a journall of his proceeding, with the description of the Coast all along as he pa'd. Passing by *Capawike*, he continued his course along the coast

coast from Harbour to Harbour till he came to *Virginia*, where he expected to meeet with *Rocraft* (as afore) but

[20] finding him dead,³¹⁷ and all lost that should have sup-
ply'd him, he was forced to shift as he could to make
his returne, and comming to *Capawike* and *Nauti-
can*,³¹⁸ and going first to *Nautican* and from thence to *Capa-
wike*, he set himselfe and some of his people on shoar, where
he met with *Epenow* the *Savage*, who had escaped (of whom)
before,: This *Savage* speaking some *Englysh*, laughed at his
owne escape, and reported the story of it, Mr. *Dormer* tould
him he came from mee, and was one of my servants, and
that I was much grieved he had beene so ill used, as to be
forced to steale away; this *Savage* was so cunning, that after
he had questioned him about me and all he knew belonged
unto me, conceived he was come on purpose to betray him,
and conspired with some of his fellowes to take the Captaine,
thereupon they laid hands upon him, but he being a brave
stoute Gentleman, drew his Sword and freed himselfe, but
not without fourteen wounds, this disaster forced him to
make all possible hast to *Virginia* to be cured of his wounds;
at the second returne he had the misfortune to fall sick and
die of the infirmity many of our Nation are subject unto at
their first comming into those parts; the losse of this Man,

I

³¹⁷ Edward Rowcroft, otherwise Edward Stallenge, had, before his em-
ployment by Sir Ferdinando Gorges, been an adventurer to *Virginia*, as a
letter of his to the Earl of *Salisbury* in the Public Records Office shows, which
explains an entry in the Records of the *Virginia Company* of London, some
time after his death, in which he is

spoken of as an old Planter. He was
slain in a quarrel by William Epps, who
in 1630 was one of the Council of Sir
Thomas Warner, Governor of St. Christopher's.

³¹⁸ This is the Island of Nantucket, which appears in ancient documents,
also as *Nantukes*, *Mantukes*, and *Nan-
tucquet*.

30 A Description of New-England.

I confess, much troubled me, and had almost made me reslove never to intermeddle in any of those courses.³¹⁹

CHAPTER XVI.

The reasons of endeavouring to renew our first Patent and to establish the forme of Government by way of Corporation at PLYMOUTH.

After I had made so many trialls of the State and Commodities of the Country, and Nature and Condition [21] of the People, and found all things agreeable to the ends I aymed at from the first, I thought it sorted with Reason and Justice to use the like diligence, order, and care for our affaires in the Northern Plantation, the Company of *Virginia* for the Southern, with some alteration of the forme of Government, as more proper (in our judgement) for affaires of that kinde, and like enlargement of the borders, beginning where they ended at 40 degrees and from thence to 48 Northwards, and into the land from Sea to Sea; of this my resolution I was bould to offer the founder considerations to divers of his Majesties honourable Privy Councell, who had so good liking thereunto, as they willingly became interested themselves therein as Patentees, and Councellours for the managing of the businesse, by whose favours I had the easier paſſage in the obtaining his Majesties

³¹⁹ Dermer, in a letter to the Rev. Samuel Purchas, written from the plantation of Captain John Martin, the brother-in-law of Sir Julius Cæſar, has left on record an interesting account of this voyage. It may be found in full, *antea*, note 276.

A Description of New-England. 31

Majesties Royall Charter to be granted us according to his warrant to the then Solicitor Generall, the true Copy whereof followeth (*viz.*) To Sir *Thomas Coventry*³²⁰ Knight, his Majesties Solicitor Generall.

Wheras it is thought fit that a Patent of Incorporation be granted to the Adventurers of the Northern Colonie in Virginia, to containe the like Liberties, Priviledges, Power, Authorities, Lands and all other things within their limits, (viz.) between the degrees of 40 and 48, as were heretofore granted to the company in Virginia, excepting onely that whereas the said company have a Freedom of Custome & Subsidie for 21 yeares, and of Impositions for ever, this new Company is to be free of Custome and Subsidie for the like terme of yeares, and of Impositions after so long time as his Majestie shall please to grant unto them, this shall be therefore to will and require you to prepare a Patent ready for his Majesties Royall Signature to the purpose aforesaid, leaving a blank for the time of freedome from imposition to be supplyed, and put in by his Majestie, for which this shall be your warrant, dated 23 July 1620

Signed by the { L. Chancellour.³²¹ Lord Digby.³²⁶
 L. Privy Seale.³²² Mr. Comptroler.³²⁷
 Earl of Arundell.³²³ Mr. Secretary Naunton.³²⁸
 Mr. Secretary Calvert.³²⁴ Mr. of the Wards.³²⁹
 Mr. of the Rolls.³²⁵

CHAP. XVII.

³²⁰ Thomas Coventry was born at Croome Dabitot, in Worcestershire, in 1578, and was educated at Balliol College. After studying law he became Recorder of London, November 17th, 1615; Solicitor-General on the 14th of the following March, and two days later was knighted by James at Theobalds. He had been a familiar friend of Coke, and the King for a while looked coldly upon him, but receiving assurances that he had no disposition to cavil at the prerogative, he was advanced to the office of Attorney-General in 1621, and in

1625 to that of Lord Keeper of the Great Seal. He was still further rewarded in 1628, by being elevated to the peerage as Baron Coventry. He was reputed to be a good lawyer and judicious politician; never in any way opposing the doctrines which for the moment were popular at court. He died on January 14th, 1639.

³²¹ Sir Fulke Greville, the friend of Sidney and Shakespeare, was eminent during the reigns of Elizabeth and James, both as a literary man and as a statesman. He was created Baron Brooke in 1620.

[22]

CHAPTER XVII.

Shewing the troubles I underwent by the reason of the Company of Virginia's exceptions, taken at the Patent granted by the Lords and others for the affaires of NEW-ENGLAND.

I have briefly given you an accompt of the failings and disasters of what hath past in those my former and foreigne undertakings, I will now (with your patience) let you see some of my troubles I met with where I might have hoped

1620. The manner of his death which took place September 30th, 1628, at which time he was Chancellor of the Exchequer, is singular. He had executed his will, and was reading to an old and confidential servitor the legacies bequeathed to his servants. When the fellow heard Greville read the amount bequeathed to him, he became angry at what he considered the smallness of the amount, and in a fit of passion stabbed his master and then committed suicide to escape the punishment due for his crime. The following epitaph may still be read on Greville's tomb in the old church at Warwick:

FULKE GREVILLE,
SERVANT TO QUEEN ELIZABETH,
COUNSELLOR TO KING JAMES,
AND FRIEND TO SIR PHILIP SYDNEY.
TROPHÆUM PECCATI.

⁸²² Edward Somerſet, Earl of Worcester, was one of the most accomplished men of the Courts of Elizabeth and James. He was especially distinguished for his ſkill in tilting and other manly exerciſes, in which he was rarely fur-paſſed. He was made Lord Privy Seal by King James in 1616. His death took place on March 3d, 1627.

⁸²³ Thomas Howard, Earl of Arundel and Surrey, was Earl Marſhall and Lord High Steward of England. He poſſeſſed a remarkable taste for painting and architecture, and was paſſionately fond of antique ſculpture, of which he acquired a rare and valuable collection. He died in Italy, September 14th, 1646.

⁸²⁴ Sir George Calvert, Secretary of Sir Robert Cecil and clerk of the Privy Council, was knighted in 1617. Although he renounced the reformed faith in 1624, and became a Roman Catholic, James I. made him Baron Baltimore. He was interested in colonization, and expended a fortune in endeavoring to fettle the Province of Avalon in Newfoundland; but failing in this enterpriſe, he obtained an extensive grant in North America, now known as Maryland. Before his patent had paſſed the ſeals, Sir George Calvert died, and the patent paſſed to his eldeſt ſon Cecil.

⁸²⁵ Sir Julius Cæſar was the ſon of Cæſar Adelman, an Italian physician of note in the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth. He was born in England in 1557, and was educated for the law. By character and ability he ſoon attained wealth and influence. He was knighted by King

hoped for a comfortable encouragement, but such is (we commonly see) the condition of humane Nature that what is well intended and confidently pursued by a publique spirit, is notwithstanding sometimes by others made subject to exceptions and so prosecuted as a matter worthy of reprehension, so fared it with me at this present, for I had no sooner past the Patent under the great Seale, but certaine of the company

King James and became Chancellor of the Exchequer, a member of the Privy Council, and Master of the Rolls, which latter office he held at the time of his death, April 28th, 1636; Granger says, 1639.

³²⁶ Sir Kenhelm Digby. He was appointed Commander of the Mediterranean Squadron in 1628, and by his success in supressing the Algerine pirates, who had been the terror of British merchants, achieved great renown. He was a man of considerable learning, but a bold theorist, which won for him the title of the "Pliny of his age for lying." He was the author of several books. He died June 11th, 1665.

³²⁷ Henry Carey was the son of William Carey and Mary, sister of Anne Boleyn. He was therefore a cousin of Queen Elizabeth, who created him Baron Hunsdon. King James made him Comptroller of the Household, and further advanced him in 1621, by conferring upon him the title of Viscount Falkland. In 1622 he was appointed Lord Deputy of Ireland, which position he occupied for seven years. He possessed some literary talent, and left to posterity a Life of King Edward the Second. He died in 1633.

³²⁸ Sir Robert Naunton was a favorite of Buckingham, and was made Secretary of State in 1617. He was subsequently made Master of the Wards. He was the author of *Fragmenta Regalia*, which comprises interesting sketches of Elizabethan men of note,

which was not published until after his death, which took place in 1630.

³²⁹ Sir Lionel Cranfield, made Master of the Court of Wards, January 15th, 1619. His career is indeed remarkable, when we consider how difficult it was for a man in his day to rise from a low estate to rank and fortune. He began life like Whittington, as a London apprentice, and by his wit and good looks won the affection of his master's pretty daughter, with a marriage portion of eight hundred pounds. With this small sum he went into trade, and soon became wealthy, and at the same time attracted public attention by his ability as a financier. Being interested in a purchase of a large quantity of land, and hearing that Lord Northampton greatly desired a small portion adjoining land which that nobleman owned, he advised his associates, as a profitable venture, to make a present to Northampton of the coveted land. This was done; and the powerful Lord introduced the ambitious plebeian to King James, who at once knighted him and appointed him Surveyor-General of the Customs. His rise was rapid. He was made a Peer in July, 1621; in the following September Lord Treasurer, and a year later received the lofty title of Earl of Middlesex. Owing to charges of corruption, he was degraded from the office of Lord Treasurer by King Charles in 1625; although he was soon pardoned, he never regained his former influence.

company of *Virginia* tooke exceptions thereat, as conceiving it tended much to their prejudice in that they were debarred the intermeddling within our limits who had formerly excluded us, from having to do with theirs, hereupon severall complaints were made to the King and Lords of the Privy Councell, who after many deliberate hearings, and large debate on both sides, saw no cause wherefore we should not injoy what the King had granted us, as well as they what the King had granted them, especially having obtained from him so many gratis favours over and above our aymes, as namely severall free gifts, divers great salaries, and other great advantages to the value (as I have understood) of five or six

[23] hundred thousand pound whereas our ambition onely
aymed at the enjoying of his Majesties favour and Juf-
tice to protect and support us in our freedomes, that
we might peaceably reap the benefits of *G O D's* gratis
gifts, raised by our owne Industryes, without any of their
helpe or hinderances, our desires being so faire that all that
were not over partiall, easily assented thereunto, and ordered
it accordingly, as by the same it may appeare, but that could
not satisfie, for I was plainly tould, that howsoever I had sped
before the Lords, I should heare more of it the next Parlia-
ment, assuring me that they would have 300 voices more than
I, whereupon I replyed, If justice could be overthrown by
voices, it should not grieve me to loose what I had so hon-
estly gotten; the next Parliament was no sooner assembled,
but I found it too true wherewith I was formerly threatned,
as you may see it following.³³⁰

CHAP. XVIII.

³³⁰ The Virginia Company's side of this controversy is presented in their records as follows:

Gorges objects to fishing in North Colony.
Dec. 1, 1619. The last great generall Courte being read Mr Thr'er acquainted them

CHAPTER XVIII.

*My being Summoned to appeare in the House of Parliament
to answer what was to be objected against the Patent of
NEW-ENGLAND.*

THE whole house being dissolved into a Committee, Sir Edward Cook,³³¹ being in the chaire, I was called for to the Barre, where after some space it pleased him to tell me that

them that Mr. John Delbridge purposing to settle a pticular Colony in Virginia desyring of the Company that for defrayinge somewhat of his charges, that hee might bee admitted to fish at Cape Codd wch request was oppoſed by S^r Ferdinand Gorge alēaginge that hee alwaies fauored Mr. Delbridge, but in this hee thought himſelfe ſomething touched that he ſhould ſue to this Company and not rather to him as propriele belonging to the North Colony to giue libertie for the fishinge in that place, it beeing within theirre latitude which was anſwered by Mr. Thr'er that the Compy of the So and North Plantation are the one free of the other. And that the Ir'es patent is that each may fish within the other the Sea being free of both, wch if the No Colony abridge them of this, they would take away theirre means and encouragements of fendinge of men.

Unto which S^r Ferdinand Georges reſplied that if hee miſtake not himſelfe both the Companies were lymittid by ye Pattent unto wch hee would ſubmitt himſelfe, for the decydinge whereof itt is referred unto the Counſell who are of both Companies to examine the L'res Pattents to morrow afternoone att my Lord of Southampton's and accordegly to determine the diſpute.

And again, March 18th : —

“Concerning the diſference of fishinge betweene the South and No Collony itt pleafeid Mr. Thr'er to ſignifie that although hee was very unwillinge by reaſon of the

multitude of other buisinesses yett hee and the Committee had intended the Lo. Duke, and the Lo: of Arundle and there was for the other ſide S^r Ferd: Gorge and others where diſputinge the matter before their Lo^{ps} they pleafeid neither to allow nor diſallowe entirely the one parte or the other, but ſett doone & order as ſeemed fitteſt to theirre Lo^{ps} for the obteyning a copy whereof they now appoynted the Secretary to repare to S^r Clement Edmonds and deſire itt of him in the name of the Compy & appoynted him to give his clarke a fee.”

Under date of July 7th, 1620, appears the following entry : —

“Sir John Dauers and S^r Thomas Roe are appoynted Committees to drawe a generall I're to his Ma^{tie} to preferue the fishinge at Cape Codd free and indifferent to both the Collonies as was intended in the firſt Pattent and being drawne to preſent the fame at the next Courte uppon Wednesday.”

The final entry (November 4th, 1620) in the Company's records relative to this matter is as follows : —

“Wherupon S^r Edwin Sandys did intitiae unto the Courte y' hee was informed that S^r Ferdinand Gorges had p'cured unto himſelfe and others a new Patent (now paſſed his Ma^{ts} great feale) wherein certain words were conveied that did not only contradic a former order of the Llds of the Counſell, which their Lps, after a full hearinge

that the House understood that there was a Patent granted to me, and diverse other noble persons therein nominated for the establishing of a Colony in *New England*, this (as it seemes) was a grievance of the *Common-wealth*, and so complained of

[24] in respect of many particulars therein contained contrary to the Lawes and priviledges of the subjects, as also

inge of the allegacons on both fides, and sett down in June last by w^{ch} this company had yielded some of their right to doe them good, and thereby promised to fish only for their necessities and transporation of people; . . . butt, by this new graunt, the Aduenturers of the Northern Collony had alfo utterlie excluded those of the sotherne from fishinge att all upon the coaste, without their leaue and lycense first sought and obtained, which was contrary and manifestly repugnant to that comunitie and freedome w^{ch} his Mat^y by the first Pattent, as is conceived, hath been pleased to graunt unto either Collony.

The Courte, therefore, seeinge no reasoun why they shold loofe their former right graunted unto them by the first Pattent, the Sea alfo beinge to all as free and comon as the Ayre, and fyndinges lesf reasoun why Sr Ferdinando Gorges shold now appropriate and make a monopolie of yt fishinge, which hath allreadie cost this company 6.000^l: and was the only means left (now the Lotteries were allmost spent and other supply began to faile) to enable them to transport their people and susteyne their plantacon withall: did wth a generall consent, refolus forthwith to peticon to his Mat^e for a redresse herein, and to pray a further declaracion of his gracieous pleasure and intention concerningc that clause of prohibition and restrainte insertert in the New Pattent, whereby they were defeated of their libertie of fishinge. Whereupon they appointed these committees to drawe the said peticon, and to make itt, in substance, agreeable to thoſe three poyns Sir Edwin Sandys had deliuereſ in open Courte. And for that Sir Thomas Roe ſaid that hee was the next day to goe to the court, they desired him to pſent the ſame to his Mat^y.

Vide History of the Virginia Com-

pany of London, by Edward D. Neill, Albany, 1869, pp. 165, 175, 192, 195 et seq.

³³¹ Sir Edward Coke. Sir Ferdinando Gorges spells the name as it was then frequently spelt. Lord Campbell remarks that it is amusing to obſerve the efforts made to diſguife names derived from trades, and that in this caſe, as the name did not correfpond with the notion of the Cokes having come over with the Conqueror, attempts had been made to derive the family name from Cock or Coke, a chief; but that, like Butler, Taylor, and ſimilair names, it more probably took its origin from the occupation of the founder of the family. Coke's ſecond wife, Lady Hatton, who would not aſſume her husband's name, adopted this spelling, and was in the habit of addreſſing him farceſtically as Mr. Cook. Sir Edward was born on the firſt of February, 1551, and died September 3d, 1634, after a remarkable career in which he gained the honor of being conſidered by his contemporaries the greatest oracle of English municipal juriſprudence. He exhibited a coarſeneſs and brutality in the trial of Sir Walter Ralegh which remarkably portrays his true character. He addreſſed the unfortunate nobleman as "Thou viper, thou traitor;" insulted his wiſeſſes, and feeling that conviction was at hand shouted vehemently, "Now Jefus Christ ſhall be glorified!" An interesting ſketch of this celebrated lawyer may be found in *Lives of the Chief Jufſices of England*, by Lord Campbell, New York, 1874, Vol. I. pp. 245-357.

also that it was a Monopoly, and the colour of planting a Colony put upon it for particular ends, and private gaine, which the House was to looke unto and to Minister justice to all parties, assuring me further that I should receive nothing but justice, and that the House would do no wrong to any, that I was a Gentleman of Honour and worth, but the Publique was to be respected before all particulars, but before they could descend to other matters in the businesse, the Patent was to be brought into the House, therefore he required the delivery of it.

To this generall Charge and speciall Command I humbly replied, that for my owne part, I was but a particular person, and inferior to many, to whom the Patent was granted, having no power to deliver it, without their assents, neither in truth was it in my custody, but being demanded who had it, I answered that it remained still (for ought I knew) in the Crowne office, where it was left since the last Parliament, for that it was resolved to be renewed for the amendment of some faults contained therein, from whence if it pleased the House, they might command it, and dispose thereof as their wisedomes thought it good. But to the generall Charge I know not (under favour) how any action of that kind could be a grievance to the publique, seeing at first it was undertaken for the advancement of Religion, the enlargement of the bounds of our Nation, the increase of trade, and the employmet of many thousands of all sorts of people.

That I conceived it could not be esteemed a Monopoly, though it is true at the first discovery of the coast few were interested in the charge thereof, for many could not be drawn

drawn to adventure in actions of that kind where they were assured of losse, and small hopes of geain.

And indeed so many adventures had been made, and so many losses sustained and received, that all or the most part

[25] that tasted thereof grew weary, till now it is found by a course of fishing, upon that coast, may be made extraordinary, which was never intended to be converted to private uses by any grant obtained by us from his Majesty, as by the severall offers made to all the Maritine Cities and Townes in the Westerne parts, that pleased to partake of the Liberties, and Immunitiess granted to us by his Majesty, which was desired principally for our warrant to regulate those affaires, the better to setle the publique Plantation by the profits to be raised by such as sought the benefit thereof, (being no more in effect) then many private Gentlemen, and Lords of manors within our owne Countries injoyed at this present, and that both agreeable to the laws and justice of our Nation without offence to the subiects Liberties; but for my particular, I was glad of the present occasion that had so happily called them together from all parts of the Kingdome, to whom I was humbly bold in the behalfe of my selfe and the rest of those intrusted in the Pattent to make present proffer thereof to the House for the Generall estate of the whole kingdome, so they would prosecute the setling the Plantation, as from the first was intended, wherein we would be their humble servants in all that lay in our power, without looking back to the great charge that had been expended in the discovery, and seizure of the coast, and bringing it to the passe it was come unto. That what was more to be said to

to the Patent for the present, I humbly prayed I might receive in particular, to the end I might be the better furnished to give them answer thereunto by my Councell, at such time they pleased to heare me againe, being confident, I should not onely have their approbation in the further prosecuting so well grounded a designe, but their furtherance also, howsoever I was willing to submit the whole to their honourable censures, hereupon it was ordered, that the Patent should be looked into by a Committee assignd for that [26] purpose, and the exceptions taken against it delivered to me, that had a prefixed day to attend them againe with my Councell at Law to answer to those their objections.

CHAPTER XIX.

My second appearance with my COUNCELL.

THE time assignd being come, and I not receiving their objections (as by the House it was ordered) I attended without my Councell, in that I wanted upon which to build my instructions for preparing them as in duty I ought, but being called I humbly told them, that in obedience to their commands, I attended to receive the Houses objections against the Patent of *New-England*, but it was not yet come to my hands, where the fault was I knew not, and therefore I besought them to assigne me a new day, and to order I might have it delivered to me as was intended, or otherwise if they so pleased, I was ready without my Councell to answer what could be objected, doubting, they might conceive, I sought by

by delayes to put off the businesse: to this it was answered by Sir *Edward Cooke*, that I had gained great favour of the House to receive the particulars in writing, by which I was able to plead my own cause (though as yet I had it not) but I acknowledged the greatnesse of their favours, and attended their further commands, according to the time assigned.

[27]

C H A P T E R XX.

My appearance the third time, together with my Councell at Law.

H Aving received the Houses exceptions against the patent, I drew up my full answers to every particular, and entertained for my councell Mr. *Finch* of *Grayes Inne*³³² (since that the Lord *Finch*) and Mr. *Caltrup*,³³³ afterwards Attorney Generall of the Court of Wards; To these I delivered my instructions, assinging them to proceed accordingly, but, as in great Causes before great States, where the Court seemes to be a party, Councell oftentimes is shye of wading farther than

³³² John Finch, created Baron Finch in 1640. He succeeded Thomas Coventry as Lord Keeper, but was quite unlike his predecessor in character; being a truckler to those in power, and ever ready to prostitute his office to selfish ends. It is related that when speaker of the House of Commons, his speech to the throne so affected the King that he presented the effusive orator with a horse and trappings which cost a hundred pounds, together with a thousand pounds in money with which

to furnish his table. He died in exile in 1660.

³³³ He was of the Middle Temple, and succeeded Robert Mason as Queen's Solicitor. He became Sir Henry Calthrop, March 8th, 1635, having been knighted on that date by King Charles. He was also Attorney-General of the Court of Wards, and author of *Liberties, Usages, and Customs of the City of London*, which was published in 1642, and reprinted in *The Somers' Trials*, Vol. V. pp. 520-536.

than with their safety they may returne ; however, both did so well, the one for the matter of Justice, the other for the matter of Law, as in Common Judgement the Objections were fully answered, and they seeming to be at a stand ; the House demanded of me what I had more to say my selfe, I being sensible wherein my Councell came short of my intentions, besought the House to take into their grave considerations, that the most part of the Fisher-Men spoken of, had in obedience to his Majesties Royall Grant, conformed themselves thereunto, and I hoped that they were but particular persons that opposed themselves against it, but admit all of them had joyned together, (yet had that belonged rather to the Councell for those affaires) to have complained of them for the many injuries and outrages done by them, that the Councell of their owne charge and cost, had first discovered that goodly coast, and found that hopefull meanes to settle a flourishing Plantation for the good of this Kingdom in generall, as well great Lords as Knights, Esquires, Gentlemen, Merchants, Fisher-Men, Trades-Men, Husband-Men, Labourers, and the like, and that both to honour and profit, [28] that the enlargement of the Kings Dominions, with the advancement of Religion in those desert parts, are matters of highest consequence, and far exceeding a simple and disorderly course of Fishing, which would soone be given over, for that so goodly a Coast could not be long left unpeopled by the *French*, *Spanish*, or *Dutch*, so that if the Plantation be destroyed, the Fishing is lost, and then the profit and honour of our Nation must perish (in all opinion) both to present and future ages, which these Men principally aymed at, that the mischiefe already sustained by those disorderly Persons

Persons, are inhumane and intollerable; for first in their manners and behaviour they are worse than the very Savages, impudently and openly lying with their Women, teaching their Men to drinke drunke, to sweare and blasphem the Name of *G O D*, and in their drunken humour to fall together by the eares, thereby giving them occasion to seek revenge; besides, they couzen and abuse the Savages in trading and trafficking, selling them Salt covered with Butter in stead of so much Butter, and the like couzenages and deceipts, both to bring the Planters and all our Nation into contempt and disgrace, thereby to give the easier passage to those People that dealt more righteously with them; that they sell unto the Savages, Musquets, Fowling-Pieces, Powder, Shot, Swords, Arrow-Heads, and other Armes, where-with the Savages flew many of those Fisher-Men, and are growne so able, & so apt, as they become most dangerous to the Planters: and I concluded,

That in this particular I had beene drawne out of my zeale to my Countryes happinesse, to engage my estate so deeply as I had done, and having but two Sonnes, I adventured the life of one of them (who is there at this present) for the better advancement thereof, with others of his Kinsmen of his owne name with many other private friends) which so neerly concerned me, that if I did expresse more passion than ordinary in the delivery thereof, I hoped the House would be pleased to pardon me, affirming, that if I should do lesse, I

might appeare willing to suffer them to perish by my
[29] Negligence, Connivence, improvidence, or ungrateful-
nessse, to the dishonour of my Nation, and burden of my
owne Conscience, but these things being considered, I pre-
sume

fume the Honourable assembly will do what in all respects shall be both just and lawfull, and that in confidence thereof, I wil cease to be further troublesome.³³⁴

CHAPTER XXI.

What followed upon my answer to the Houses exceptions.

B
eing perfwaded in my owne understanding, as well as in the judgement of thofe that accompanied me I had sufficeintly satisfied the most part of the Houfe, the rather for that they forbad the Lawyers to speake any more, after I began to deliver what I had to fay for my felfe, with this hope I departed attending the successe, but understanding (from thofe that were favourers and parties with me) that my opposites held their resolutions to make it a Publique Grievance, and for fuch, to present it to his Majefty. Hereupon I thought it became me to use my best meanes his Majefty might have fight of their exceptions and my answers, which accordingly was performed; fo that at the time the Houfes presented the Publique Grievances of the Kingdome, that of the Patent of *New-England* was the firſt, wherein was declared, that having heard me and my Learned Councell feveral dayes, but that I could not defend the fame, which the King obſerving was a little moved, finding the matter was made greater than the caufe required; this their Publique

³³⁴ The reply of Sir Edward Coke to this argument was: "Shall none visit the sea-coast for fishing? This is to make a monopoly upon the feas, which were wont to be free. If you alone are to pack and dry fish, you attempt a monopoly of the wind and fun."

lique Declaration of the Houses, dislike of the cause, shooke of all my adventurers for Plantation, and made many of the

[30] Patentees to quit their Interest, so that in all likely-hood I must fall under the weight of so heavy a burthen,

but the justnesse of my cause being truly apprehended by the King, from which I understood, he was not to be drawne to overthrow the Corporation he so much approoved of in his owne judgement, and I was wished not to omit the prosecution thereof, as cause required, but I thought better to forbear for the present, in honour and respect of what had past in so publique a manner betweene the King and his House of Commons, who shortly after upon severall reasons, rising from particular persons, who (as it seemed) were more liberall in their language than became them, trenching farther upon the Kings Prerogative Power, he thought to be tolerated as doubting of the consequence thereof, whereupon the Parliament was dismissed, divers of those free speakers committed to the Tower, others to other Prisons,³³⁵ so that now I was called upon to attend those affaires on severall accidents that happened. As first, for that the French Embassadour made challenge to those Territories granted us by the King our Soveraigne, in the behalfe of the King of *France*, his Master, as belonging to his Subjects, that by his authority were possessed thereof as a

part

³³⁵ The Parliament was dissolved by an insulting proclamation on the 6th of January, 1622; and Sir Edward Coke, Sir Robert Phillips, and other members were committed to the Tower and other prisons. James had been reported sick; but in his anger at the proceedings of Parliament, he rode up to London foam-

ing, it is said, at the mouth, and after proroguing Parliament, ordered the Clerk of the Commons to bring him the journals, from which he erased with his own hand, in the presence of the judges and his councillours, the objectionable proceedings of the would-be reformers.

part of *Nova France*, to which I was commanded by the King to give answer to the Embassadour his claime, which was sent me from the Lord Treasurer under the title of *Le Memoriall de Monsieur Seigneur Le Conte de Tillieres, Ambassadeur pour Le Royde France*;³³⁶ Whereunto I made so full a reply (as it seemes) there was no more heard of that their claime. But as Captaine *Dormer*, who (as I said) was coasting that Country, met with some Hollanders that were setled in a place we call *Hudson's River*,³³⁷ in trade with the Natives, who in the right of our Patent forbade them the place, as being by his Majestie appointed to us; there answer was, they understood no such thing, nor found any of our Nation there, so that they hoped they had not offended; However, this their communication removed them not, but upon our complaining of their intrusion to his Majesty, order was given to his Embassadours to deale with the States, to know by what warrant any of their Subjects [31] tooke upon them to settle within those limits by him granted to his Subjects who were royally seized of a part thereof; to which was answered, that they knew of no such thing, if there were any, it was without their authority, and that they onely had enacted the company for the afaires

³³⁶ The Comte de Tillières belonged to a noble French family, and was noted for his diplomatic skill. He was especially charged with the busyness of settling the French claims in America, based upon the discoveries of Jacques Cartier, and the colonial establishment of Samuel de Champlain at Tadoufac. He arrived at London in September, 1623; but owing to the signal failure of his mission, he was recalled in the following

June, and returned home baffled and disappointed, and, we may believe, with no very kindly feelings toward Gorges, who was chiefly instrumental in his defeat.

³³⁷ The first European who is alleged to have visited this river was Verrazano, in 1524. The honor of its discovery has, however, been conceded to Henry Hudson, who explored it extensively in 1609. It has had many appellations, having

faires of the *West-Indies*; ³³³ this answer being returned, made us to prosecute our businesse, and to resolve of the removing of those Interlopers to force them to submit to the Government of those to whome that place belonged. Thus you may see how many burthens I travailed under of all sides, and yet not come near my journies end.

CHAPTER XXII.

Of the Descent of Mr. Perce,³³⁹ Mr. Day, others their Associates, within our limits being bound for Virginia.

BEFORE the unhappy controversie hapned between those of *Virginia*, and my selfe (as you have heard) they were forced through the great charge they had been at, to hearken to any propositions that might give ease and furtherance

having been known by the aboriginal inhabitants as the Shatemuc as well as the Cahohataba. Hudson named it the River of the Mountains; but this soon gave place to the River Mauritius, in honor of Prince Maurice, of Nassau. Near the close of the seventeenth century it was entitled the North River; but the name of the succcesful navigator Hudson, the name employed to defignate it by Gorges, still clings to it.

³³⁸ This answser of the Dutch Government would seem evasive; but it was strictly true, as Dutch statesmen had not risen to a comprehension of the importance to their country of colonizing the New World. A considerable Dutch settlement had taken place at New Netherland, a name adopted in accordance with the prevalent custom which had given to the new settlements the

names of the countries from which the colonists had come, as New France, New Scotland, and New England. This Dutch settlement was simply a body of traders under the control of a corporation, known as the Dutch West India Company; hence it was in no condition to maintain itself against the encroachments of the English, who thoroughly comprehended the importance of continuous colonization under a well-ordered and stable government. Had Dutch statesmen equally comprehended this, the history of the Dutch in America would have been quite different from what it is to-day; for the Dutch people were in all respects the peers of the English, and able to compete with them in peaceful or warlike purfuits.

³³⁹ John Pierce was a citizen of London, by trade a cloth-maker. A patent had

therance to so hopefull a businesse; to that purpose, it was referred to their considerations how necessary it was, that means might be used to draw into those enterprises some of those families that had retired themselves into *Holland* for scruple of conscience, giving them such freedome and liberty, as might stand with their likings, this advice being hearkned unto, there were that undertook the putting it in practise, and accordingly brought it to effect so far forth, as that the three ships³⁴⁰ (such as their weake fortunes were able

had been taken out by the Pilgrims, as they are now familiarly denominated, on the 19th of June, 1619, which ran to John Wincob, a gentleman in the employ of the Countess of Lincoln. This was superseeded by one to John Pierce and others on February 12th, 1620. This latter is the patent under which Pierce and Day made their "descent" within the limits of the Council for New England. These patents were both from the Southern Virginia Company. A third patent was granted to Pierce and his associates by the Council for New England, June 1st, 1621. This patent was for a long time lost, but is now to be seen at Pilgrim Hall in Plymouth, Massachusetts. The signatures of Lennox, Hamilton, Warwick, Sheffield, and Gorges are plainly legible. Pierce, on the 22d of April, 1622, obtained from the Council for New England a fourth patent, running to him, his heirs, associates and assigns. It has always been believed that by this act Pierce intended to defraud his associates of their title to the property in which they had been made jointly interested with himself by formal letters of association; but proof of this is insufficient. He seems to have quietly permitted his last patent to be cancelled by the Council. Of

Day, mentioned by Sir Ferdinando Gorges, nothing is known.

³⁴⁰ This is incorrect, as there were but two ships, the *Mayflower* and the *Speedwell*. There seems to be but little doubt that before sailing from Plymouth the treacherous captains had been persuaded to do what they could to prevent the Pilgrims from carrying out their design of landing in the vicinity of the Hudson River, and Sir Ferdinando Gorges has been suspected of having conspired with the infamous Jones, who commanded the *Mayflower*, to land them within the limits of his company's patent; but there is nothing to justify this suspicion; while evidence exists to indicate that the Dutch were at the bottom of such a conspiracy. There is a direct statement to this effect by Morton in his *Memorial* in the following words: "Some of the Dutch having notice of their intention, and having thoughts about the same time of erecting a plantation there likewise, they fraudulently hired the said Jones, by delays while they were in England, and now, under pretence of the shoals, to disappoint them in there going thither;" and he concludes by the positive assertion that "*of this plot between the Dutch and Mr. Jones, I have late and certain intelligence.*"

able to provide) whereof two proved unserviceable and so were left behind, the third with great difficulty recovered [32] the coast of *New-England*, where they landed their people, many of them weake and feeble through the length of the Navigation, the leakineffe of the ship, and want of many other necessaries such undertakings required; but they were not many daies a shoar before they had gotten both health and strength, through the comfort of the Ayr, the store of fish and fowle, with plenty of wholsome rootes and hearbs the Country affoarded; besides the civill respect the Natives used towards them, tending much to their hap-pineffe in so great extremity they were in, after they had well considered the state of their affaires and found that the Authority they had from the Company of *Virginia* could not warrant their abode in that place, which they found so prosperous and pleasing to them, they hastned away their ship, with order to their Sollicitor to deale with me, to be a meanes they might have a grant from the Councell of *New Englands* affaires to settle in the place, which was accordingly performed to their particular satisfaction and good content of them

intelligence." Several writers have, however, attempted to disprove this statement on the ground that neither Bradford nor Winflow mention such a plot, and that Morton wrote nearly fifty years after the landing of the Pilgrims. These writers have, however, lost sight of an important fact; namely, the source of Morton's information. Thomas Willett was a Plymouth man, and had lived at Leyden, where he became familiar with the Dutch language and people. Not long before Morton wrote, the English having subdued the Dutch at New York, Willett, an old friend of Morton,

on account of his knowledge of and popularity with the Dutch, was put in possession of the government, and the Dutch records and correspontence fell into his hands. What more natural than that Willett should communicate the interesting particulars of this plot, the evidence of which he found in the Dutch archives, to his old friend Morton, who was then Colonial Secretary, and in correspontence with him! Morton's record is the only original one, though it has been adopted by Mather, Hubbard, and other writers.

them all, which place was after called *New-Plymouth*, where they have continued ever since very peaceable, and in all plenty of all necessaries that nature needeth, if that could satisfie our vaine affections, where I will leave them for the present.³⁴¹

CHAPTER XXIII.

My Son Captain Robert Gorges sent by Authority of the Councell for those affaires, as their Lievttenant Generall.

THE severall complaints made to the Councell of the abuses committed by severall the Fishermen, and other [33] Interlopers, who without order from them frequented those coasts, tending to the scorne of our Nation, both to the ordinary mixing themselves with their women, and other beastly demeanors, tending to Drunkenesse to the overthrow of our trade and dishonour of the Government.

For reformation whereof, and to prevent the evils that may ensue, they were pleased to reslove of the sending some one into those parts, as their Lievttenant, to regulate the estate of their affaires and those abuses, hereupon my Son *Robert Gorges* being newly come out of the *Venetian War*, was the man they were pleased to pitch upon being one of the company

³⁴¹ This patent was dated June 1st, 1621, and was the first made by the Council for New England. Like that of January 13th, 1629, it was for several years missing, but is now in the office of the Registry of Deeds at Plymouth, Massachusetts. It does not bear the grand seal of the Council, like the

later patent; but the private seals as well as the signatures of Lennox, Hamilton, Warwick, Gorges, appear upon it, and it once bore another now indecipherable. It may be found in the *Collections of the Massachusetts Historical Society*, Vol. IV. second series, p. 156.

pany, and interested in a proportion of the land with the rest of the Patentees, in the Bay of the *Majechewsett* containing ten miles in breadth, and thirty miles into the maine land, who between my Lord *Gorges* and my selfe, was speedily sent away into the said Bay of *Massechewset*, where he arrived about the beginning of *August* following, *Anno 1623.* that being the place he resolved to make his residence, as proper for the Publique, as well as for his private,³⁴² where landing his provisions, and building his storehouses, he sent to them of *New-Plymouth* (who by his Commission were authorised to be his afflstant) to come unto him, who willingly obeyed his order, and as carefully discharged their duties; by whose experience he fuddainely understood what was to be done with the poore meanes he had, beleiving the supplyes he expected would follow, according to the undertakings of divers his familiar friends who had promised as much; but they hearing how I sped in the House of Parliament withdrew themselves, and my selfe and friends were wholly disabled to do any thing to purpose.

The report of these proceedings with us, comming to my Sons eares, he was advised to return home, till better occasion should offer it selfe unto him.

Here

³⁴² The word " interest " should be added to complete the sence.

[34] *Here followes my Son Captaigne Gorges Patent.*

*To all whom these presents shall come, the Councell for the
Affaires of NEW-ENGLAND in AMERICA; send
Greeting.*

WHereas it hath pleased the Kings Most Excellent Majesty by his Royall Grant, bearing date the third day of November, in the eighteenth year of his Majesties Reigne over this his Highness Realme of *England, &c.* For divers causes therein expressed, absolutly to give, grant, and confirme unto us the said Councell and our Succef-sours, all the foresaid Land of *New-England*, lying and being from fourty to fourty eight degrees of Northerly Latitude, and in length by all that breadth aforesaid, from Sea to Sea throughout the Main Land, together with all the Woods, Waters, Rivers, Soyles, Havens, Harbours, Islands, and other Commodities whatfoever thereunto belonging, with all priviledges, Preheminencies, Proffits, and Liberties by Sea and Land, as by the said Grant, amongst other things therein contained, more at large appeareth. Now know all Men by these Presents, that we the Councell of *New England* for and in respect of the good and speciall service done by Sir *Ferdinando Gorges* Knight to the Plantation, from the first attempt thereof unto this present, as also for many other causes, us hereunto moving, and likewise for and in consideration of the payment of one hundred and sixty [35] pounds of lawfull *English* Money unto the hands of our Treasurer, by *Robert Gorges* Sonne of the said Sir *Ferdinando Gorges* Knight, whereof, and of every part and parcell whereof the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires Executors and Assignes are for ever acquitted and discharged by these presents, have given, granted and confirmed, and by these presents, do give grant and confirme unto the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires and Assignes for ever, all that part of the Main Land

52 *A Description of New-England.*

Land in *New-England* aforesaid, commonly called or knowne by the name of *Messachusack*, situate lying and being upon the North-East fide of the Bay, called or knowne by the name of *Messachuset*, or by what other name or names soever it be, or shall be called or knowne, together with all the Shoars and Coasts along the Sea, for ten *English* miles in a streight line towards the North-East, accounting one thousand seven hundred sixty yards to the mile, and thirty *English* miles (after the same rate) unto the Main Land through all the breadth aforesaid, together with all the Islets and Islands, lying within three miles of any part of the said lands (except such Islands as are formerly granted,) together also with all the Lands, Rivers, Mines and Mineralls, Woods, Quarryes, Marshes, Waters, Lakes, Fishings, Huntings, Fowlings, and Commodities and Hereditaments whatsoever, with all and singular their appurtenances, together with all Prerogatives, Rights, Jurisdictions, and Royalties, and power of Judicature in all Causes and Matters whatsoever Criminal, Capital and Civil, arising, or which may hereafter arife within the Limits, Bounds, and Precincts aforesaid, to be executed according to the great Charter of *England*, and such Lawes as shall be hereafter establisched by Publique Authority of the State assembled in Parliament in *New-England*, to be executed and excercised by the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires and Affignes, or his or their Deputies, Lievteneants, Judges, Stewards, or other officers thereunto by him or them assignd, deputed or appointed from time to time, with all other Priviledges, Franchises, Liberties, and Immunitiess, with Escheats and casualties thereof

[36] arising, or which shall or may hereafter arise within the said Limits and Precincts, with all the Interest, Right, Title, Claime, and Demand whatsoever, which we the said Councell and our Successours now of right have or ought to have, and claime or may have, or acquire hereafter in or to the said portion of Lands, and Islands, or any the Premisses, in as free, ample, large and beneficall manner to all intents, constructions, and purposes whatsoever, as we the said Councell by his Majesties said Letters-Patents, may, or can grant the same (saving and alwayes reserving) unto the said Councell, and their Successours,

Successours, and to the court of Parliament hereafter to be in *New-England* aforesaid, and to either of them power to receive, heare, and determine all and singlar Appeale and Appeals of every person and persons whatsoever, dwelling or inhabiting within the said Territories, and Islands, or either or any of them to the said *Robert Gorges* granted as aforesaid, of and from all Judgments, and Sentences whatsoever given within the said Territories, to have and to hould all and every the Lands and Premisses above by these presents granted (except before excepted) with their and every of their Appurtenances with all the Royalties, Jurisdictions, Mines, Mineralls, Woods, Fishing, Fowling, Hunting, Waters, Rivers, and all other Profits, Commodities, and Hereditaments whatsoever, within the Precincts aforesaid, or to the said Lands, Islands, or Premisses, or any of them in any wise belonging or appertaining, to the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires and Assigues for ever, to the onely proper use and behoofe of the said *Robert Gorges* his Heires and Assigues for ever more ; to be held of the said Councell, and their Sucessors, *per Gladium Comitatus*, that is to say, by finding 4 able Men conveniently armed or arrayed for the Warres to attend upon the Governour for any service within fourteen dayes after warning, and yeilding and paying unto the said Councell one fiftieth part of all the Oare of the Mines of Gold and Silver, which shall be had, possessed, and obtained within the Precincts aforesaid, for all services and demands whatsoever, to be delivered into the Tower

of *London* in *England*, to and for the use of his Majesty his

[37] Heires and Successours, from time to time ; And lastly know ye,

that we the said Councell have Deputed, Authorized, and Appointed, and in our place and stead have put *David Thomson* Gent. or in his absence any other person that shall be their Governour, or other Officer unto the said Councell, to be our true and lawfull Attourney and Attourneys, and in our name and stead to enter into the said Lands, and other the Premisses with their Appurtenances, or into some part thereof in the name of the whole, for us and in our names to have and take Possession and Seisin thereof, and after such Possession and Seisin thereof, or of some other part thereof had and taken, then
for

54 *A Description of New-England.*

for us and in our name to deliver the same unto the said *Robert Gorges* or his Heires, or to his or their certain Attourney or Attourneys to be by him or his heires appointed in that behalfe, according to the true intent and meaning of these Presents, Ratifying, Confirming, and Allowing, all and whatsoever our Attourney or Attourneys shall do in or about the Premisses, or in part thereof by vertue of these Presents. In witnesse whereof, we have affixed our Common Seale, the thirtieth day of *December* in the yeare of the Reigne of our Sovereign Lord *JAMES* by the Grace of *GOD* of *England, France* and *Ireland*, King, Defendor of the Faith, &c. the twentieth, and of *Scotland* the fifty sixth.

*Lenox*³⁴³ *Hamilton*.³⁴⁴

Arrundell *Surrey*.

Barn. *Goach*.³⁴⁵

Robert Mansell.³⁴⁶

Wi. Boles.³⁴⁷

CHAP. XXIV.

³⁴³ Lodowick Stuart, second Duke of Lennox, eldest son of Esme Stuart, Lord Aubigny, was High Chamberlain and Admiral of Scotland; and before the accession of James to the English throne, was representative of Scotland to the Court of France. He filled many important offices in the royal household, being a cousin of the sovereign, and was one of the few who shared and merited the confidence of the King. He was created Earl of Richmond, 1613, Earl of Newcastle and Duke of Richmond in 1623, shortly before his death, which suddenly took place in February, 1624.

³⁴⁴ James, the third Marquis of Hamilton, and second Earl of Cambridge. His first distinction was at the coronation of Charles I. in 1625, on which occasion, being then nineteen years of age, he bore the sword of State in the royal procession. Espousing the cause of the monarch who had bestowed many

honors upon him, he was defeated at the battle of Preston on August 20th, 1648, and a few days later taken prisoner. After several months of confinement he was beheaded on the 9th of March, 1649.

³⁴⁵ The name of Dr. Barnaby Goche does not appear among the charter members of the Council for New England. He was Doctor of Civil Law, Chancellor of Worcester, and at the time of his death by the plague, February, 1625, was Master of Magdalen College, Cambridge.

³⁴⁶ Sir Robert Mansell was the third son of Sir Edward Manfell, and was knighted by the Earl of Essex for his valor at the siege of Calais in 1596. He is spoken of by Goodman and the author of the *Secret History of the Court of James First*, as a man conspicuous for courage and honesty.

³⁴⁷ William Boles was clerk of the Council at a salary of twenty pounds per

[38]

CHAPTER XXIV.

Captaine John Mafons the meanes of Interesting the Scotish Nation into that of New-Scotland.

Captaine *John Mason* was himselfe a man of action and had been sometime Goverour of a Plantation in the *New-Found-land*, his time being expired there, he returned into *England*, where he met with Sir *William Alexander* who was Mr. of requests to his Majesty for the realme of *Scotland*, but since Earle of *Starline*, who hearing of Captaine *Mafons* late comming out of the *New-Found-land* was desirous to be acquainted with him. To that end he invited him to his house, and after he had throughly informed himselfe of the estate of that Country, he declared his affection to Plantation, and wisht the Captaine to be a means to procure him a Grant of the Planters thereof for a portion of land with them, who effected what he desired.³⁴⁸ The Captaine understanding

per annum. He was not one of the charter members, but was elected to the office of clerk, November 16th, 1622, having been proposed at a meeting of the Council on the 12th of the previous July.

³⁴⁸ A paper relating to the title of Nova Scotia, discovered by the editor in the Office of the Public Records in London, and to be found printed in the Maine Historical Society's *Documentary Series*, Vol. IV., indicates that De la Tour first called Alexander's attention to the territory which he finally acquired. This document states that "Mons. de la Tour," who "first discov-

ered that country" about 1606, "and built for his owne habitation the place called St. John's Fort upon ye River of St. Johns — coming into Scotland engaged Sir William Alexander, then Secretary of State to King James, to support his right in it, and for that end to take part of ye interest, and in order thereto Sir William Alexander obtained a grant of it from K. James — 1621. This grant was by K. Ch. I. conferred on Sir William Alexander (now Earle of Sterlin) 1625.

"In the yeaire 1630. ye Earl Sterlin for Consideracons Conveyes Part of Nova Scotia to M^r de la Tour wth right of

56 *A Description of New-England.*

understanding how far forth I had proceeded in the businesse of *New-England*, advised him to deale with me for a part of what we might conveniently spare, without our prejudice within the bounds of our Grant. Sir *William Alexander* intending to make himselfe sure of his purpose, procured his Majesty (for what could they not do in those times in such cases) to send to me to assigne him a part of our Territories, his Majesties gracious message was to me, as a command agreeing with his pleasure, to have it so. Whereupon an instrument was presently drawn for the bounding thereof, which was to be called *New-Scotland*, which afterwards [39] was Granted him by the King under the Seale of *Scotland*. Thus much I thought fit to insert by the way, that posterity might know the ground, from whence businesses of that nature had their originall.³⁴⁹

CHAP. XXV.

of a Marquesat &c. and this was confirmed under ye Great Seale of Scotland."

This does not conflict with the statement of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, but adds to it. Gorges, it would seem, supposed that Sir William Alexander's first knowledge of the country had been derived from Mason; while the fact was that the shrewd Scotchman had already studied the subject under the expert instruction of De la Tour, and without revealing his motives, fought Mason in order to elicit further knowledge upon the subject, which he succeeded so far

in doing as to become convinced that the southern boundary of the territory he purposed acquiring should include a portion of the territory belonging to Gorges and his associates.

³⁴⁹ Why this charter was given under the seal of Scotland is not apparent. The arbitrary act of James in compelling Gorges and his associates to part with their property to a favorite without consideration, was, as Sir Ferdinando intimates, in accordance with the spirit of an age in which personal rights were ignored by those holding power.

CHAPTER XXV.

L ieutenant Colonell Norton³⁵⁰ undertaking to setle a Plantation on the River of *Agomentico*,³⁵¹ if I pleased to beare a part with him and his Associates, this Gentleman was one I had long known, who had raised himself from a Souldier, to the quality he had from a Corporall to a Serjant, and so upward he was painfull and industrious, well understanding what belonged to his duties in whatsoeuer he undertooke, and strongly affected to the businesse of Plantation, having acquainted me of his designes, and of his Associates, I gave him my word, I would be his intercessour to the Lords for obtayning him a Patent for any place he desired, not already Granted to any other, but conceaving he should be so much the better fortified, if he could get me to be an undertaker with him, and his Associates upon his motion; I was contented my Grand-Son *Ferdinando* should be nominated together with him and the rest, to whom was past a Patent of twelve thousand Acres of land upon the East-side
of

³⁵⁰ Francis Norton was a man of high character, "of a bold and cheerful spirit and full of love to the truth," we are told by Edward Johnfon, the author of *The Wonder Working Providence*. After the death of Mason, Norton was appointed by the widow to manage the estate of her husband in New England; but, the colony not prospering, Norton, who was living at the Great House in Portsmouth, decided to remove to Boston, where he became active in military as well as civil affairs. He made a visit to his native land in 1647, but shortly

returned to resume his active duties in the land of his adoption. After a busy and useful career, he died, July 27th, 1667, full of years and honors.

³⁵¹ This word, or, as the Rev. Edward Ballard gives it, Anghemakti-koos, is said to signify Snow-fhoe River, on account of the fact that the pond forming its source is shaped like a snow-fhoe. The river and town built upon its banks were named subsequently, by Gorges, Gorgiana, but later York, from the English town by that name captured by Cromwell's army in 1644.

of the River *Agomentico*, and twelve thousand of Acres more of land on the West-side to my said Son *Ferdinando*, here-upon he and some of his Associates hastened to take posseſſion of their Territories, carrying with them their Families; and other necessary provisions, and I ſent over for my Son, my Nephew Captaine *William Gorges*, who had been my Lievttenant in the Fort of *Plymouth*, with ſome other Craftſmen for the building of houses, and erecting of Saw-[40] Mills; And by other ſhipping from *Bristol*, ſome Cattell with other ſervants, by which the foundation of the Plantation was laid, and I was the more hopefull of the happy ſucceſſe thereof, for that I had not far from that place, *Richard Vines*, a Gentleman and Servant of my owne who was ſettled there ſome years before, and had beene interreſſed in the diſcovery and feiſure thereof for me, as formerly hath beene related, by whose diligēce and care thoſe my affaires had the better ſucceſſe, as more at large will appear in its proper place.

CHAPTER XXVI.

What followed the breaking up of the PARLIAMENT in such discontent.

THE King not pleased with divers the paſſages of ſome particular persons, who in their ſpeeches ſeemed to trench farther on his Royall Prerogative than ſtood with his safety and honour to give way unto, fuddainly brake off the Parliament, whereby divers were ſo fearfull what would follow ſo unaccuſtomed an action, ſome of the principall of thoſe lib-
erall

erall speakers being committed to the Tower, others to other Prifons, which tooke all hope of Reformation of Church-Government from many not affecting Episcopal Jurisdiction, nor the usuall practise of the Common Prayers of the Church, whereof there were severall sorts, though not agreeing among themselves, yet all of like dislike of those particulars, some of the discreeter sort to avoid what they found themselves subject unto, made use of their friends to procure from the Councell for the affaires of *New-England* to settle a Colony within their limits, to which it pleased the thrice honoured Lord of *Warwick*³⁵² to write to me then at *Plymouth*, to condescend that a Patent might be granted

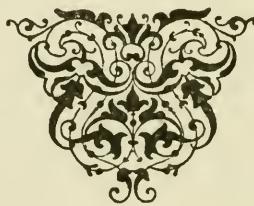
[41] to such as then sued for it, whereupon I gave my approbation so far forth as it might not be prejudiciale to my Sonne *Robert Gorges* interests, whereof he had a Patent under the Seale of the Councell, here-upon there was a Grant passed as was thought reasonable, but the same was after enlarged by his Majesty and confirmed under the great Seale of *England*, by the Authority whereof

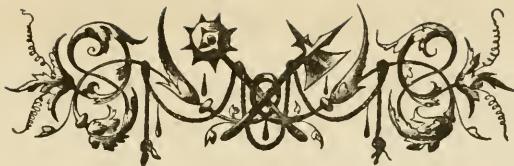
³⁵² To Robert Rich, Earl of Warwick, the Plymouth, as well as the Massachusetts Bay Colony, here alluded to, were indebted for their patents. On all occasions he exhibited a friendly disposition towards the emigrating Puritans, which was probably one occasion of discontent which subsequently arose against him in the Council for New England, of which he was for a considerable time the president. Leighs, the seat of the Earl, was unsurpassed in beauty by any estate in the kingdom, which caused Calamy, in a sermon on the occasion of the Earl's death, to relate this anecdote, that a gentleman of wit

had told the Earl, "that he had good reason to make sure of heaven, as he would be a great loser in changing so charming a place for hell." The Earl was wont to listen to long discourses by Puritan preachers, and often had them come to his houfe and repeat sermons to which he had listened in public. Although these preachers spared not, and painted the licentiousnes to which he was addicted in the most lurid colors, the sermons, it is said, did not cause him to change his immoral courses. He died April 19th, 1658, at the age of seventy-one years.

whereof the undertakers proceeded so effectually, that in a very short time numbers of people of all sorts flocked thither in heapes, that at last it was specially ordered by the Kings command, that none should be suffered to go without licence first had and obtained, and they to take the Oaths of Supremacy and Allegiance, so that what I long before prophefied, when I could hardly get any for money to reside there, was now brought to passe in a high Measure, the reason of that restraint was grounded upon the severall complaints, that came out of those parts, of the divers sefts and schismes that were amongst them, all contemning the publique Government of the Ecclesiasticall State; And it was doubted, that they would in short time, wholly shake off the Royall Iurisdiction of the Soveraigne Magistrate.

The





[42]

The Second Booke.

CHAPTER I.

*Shewing the reasons of my desire and others my Affociates
to resigne the grand Patent to his Majesty, and the dividing
of the Sea coasts between the Lords who had continued con-
stant favourers and followers thereof.*

After I had past all those failings in my first attempts you have hard of, and had undergone those home-stormes afore spoken of by those of *Virginia*, I would willingly have sat down in dispaire of what I aymed at, but was stirred up and incouraged by the most eminent of our company, not to give over the businesse his Majesty did so much approve of, whose gracious favour I should not want, and whereof I had already sufficient proofe. Hereupon I began againe to erect my thoughts how ought might be effected to advance the weak foundation already laid, when as so it pleased God to have it, in the yeare 1621. after the Parliament that then sat brake off in discontent, I was sollicited to consent to the passing of a Patent to certain undertakers who intended to transport themselves into those parts, with their whole Families,

lies, as I shewed before. The libertie they obtained thereby, and the report of their well doing, drew after them [43] multitudes of discontented persons of severall sefts and conditions, in so much that they began at last to be a pester to themselves, threatening a civill war before they had established a civill form of Government between themselves, and doubtlesse had not the patience and wisedome of Mr. *Wanthrop*,³⁵³ Mr. *Humphreys*,³⁵⁴ Mr. *Dudly*,³⁵⁵ and others their assitants, and others been the greater, much mischife would suddainly have overwhelmed them, more then did befall them, notwithstanding amongst those great swarmes there went many that wanted not love and affection to the Honour of the King, and happineffe of their Native Country, however they were mixt with those that had the State of the establisched Church Government in such scorne, and contempt, as finding themselves in a Countrey of liberty, where tongues might speake with out controule, many fuller of malice,

³⁵³ John Winthrop, the first governor of Massachusets, born in Groton in Suffolk, England, January 12th, 1588; died March 26th, 1649. No note can do justice to this noble man. It has been truly said of him that, "in his magnanimity, disinterestednes, and moderation, in his mingled firmness of principle and mildness of temper, in his harmonious character, consistenter life, and well-balanced mind, the Father of Massachusets reminds us of the great 'Father of his country,' and is the only name in our history worthy to stand as a parallel to Washington."

³⁵⁴ John Humphrey, one of the six original grantees of the Massachusets Bay Charter. He was son-in-law to the Earl of Lincoln, and settled in 1632 at

Swampscot. He occupied the position of a magistrate until 1641, when having met with severe losses by fire he returned to England, where he died.

³⁵⁵ Thomas Dudley, born in 1577, at Northampton, England, commanded a company of English volunteers under Henry IV. of France at the siege of Amiens in 1597. When the persecution of nonconformists became violent, he joined the host whose faces were turned to the western wildernes over feas; and when John Winthrop became Governor he was made an assitant, and soon after Deputy-Governor of Massachusets. In 1634 he succeeded Winthrop as Governor, and in 1644 was made the first Major-General of the Colony. He closed his useful career July 31st, 1653.

malice, than reason, spared not to speake the worst that evill affections could invent, in so much that the distance of the place could not impeach the transportation thereof to the eares of those it most concerned, and who were bound in Honour and Justice to vindicate the State, he was so eminent a servant unto.

Hereupon the King and his Councell began to take into their serious considerations, the consequences that might follow so unbridled spirits, and the Lords interested in the Government of those affaires, finding the Kings dislike thereof, considered how to give his Majesty (and his Councell of State) some satisfaction for the time to come, *Anno. 1622.* Thereupon it was ordered that none should be suffered to passe into *New-England*, but such as did take the oaths of Supremacy, and Allegiance; This held sometime, but was omitted till the yeare 1631. till which time, as the daily reports brought over word of their continued misdemeanors, for that at last, I my selfe was called upon (with others)

as being the supporter and Author of all that was dif-
[44] taſtfull: I confessed (indeed) that I had earnestly fought

by all meanes the planting of those parts by those of our own Nation and that for divers weighty considerations approved of by the King and his Councell, but could not expect that so many evills should have hapned thereby, this answer served for the present, but could not wipe away the jealousie that was had of me, though I laboured continually to put off the scandalous opinion of such as daily did endeavour to do me evill offices, which I found with the lateſt, but was thereupon moved to desire the rest of the Lords that were the principall actors in the busynesse, that we might re-figne

signe our grand Patent to the King, and passe particular Patents to our selves, of such parts of the Countrey along the Sea coast as might be sufficient for our owne uses, and such of our private friends, as had affections to works of that nature. To this motion there was a generall assent by the Lords, and a day appointed too, for the conclusion thereof.³⁵⁶

CHAPTER II.

The meeting of the Lords for the dividing of the Coast.

THE time being come their Lordships had appointed, an act was made for the resignation of the Patent, with the confirmation of our particulars, where the bounds were thus laid out; Beginning from the Westermost parts of our bounds Eastwards, where the Lord of *Mougrave*³⁵⁷ began his limits, and ended the same at the river called *Hudsone* river, to the Eastward of the river was placed the Duke of *Lenox*, since Duke of *Richmond*,³⁵⁸ to the end of Sixty miles Eastward, next to him was placed the Earle of *Carlile*,³⁵⁹ next to him

³⁵⁶ This was April 25th, 1635.

³⁵⁷ Edmund, third Baron Sheffield, one of the corporate members of the Council for New England, was a noted commander under Elizabeth, who made him Governor of the Brill and Knight of the Garter. He was created Earl of Mulgrave by Charles I., in February, 1626. His death took place in 1646.

³⁵⁸ James Stuart, the fourth Duke of Lennox, created Duke of Richmond in 1641. He held many offices of honor, as Lord Great Chamberlain, Admiral of Scotland, Warden of the Cinque Ports, and Knight of the Garter. His liber-

ality was great; and when Charles I. found himself oppofed by the Parliament, Lennox subscribed forty thousand pounds to aid his sovereign. He was one of the faithful friends who followed Charles to the scaffold, and after the execution took charge of his body and faw it decently buried at Windsor. He survived until 1655.

³⁵⁹ Sir James Hay, of Pitcorthie, County of Fife, created Viscount Doncaster in 1618, and Earl of Carlisle in 1622. He accompanied King James to England, and was one of the first favorites of that monarch who sent him as ambassador

[45] him the Lord *Edward Gorges*, next to him was settled the Marquesse *Hamilton*, next to him Captaine *John Mason*; And lastly my self whose bounds extended from the middest of *Merineck*³⁶⁰ to the great River of *Sagadahocke* being Sixty miles, and so up into the Maine land one hundred and twenty miles.

CHAPTER III.

The Orders that are settled for the Government of my said Province.

Being now seized of what I had travelled for above forty yeares, together with the expences of many thousand Pounds, and the best time of my age loaden with troubles and vexations from all parts, as you have heard; I will now give you an account in what Order I have settled my affaires in that my Province of *Maine* with the true forme and manner of the Government, according to the Authority granted me by his Majesties Royal Charter. First, I divided the whole into eight Bailywicks, or Counties, and those againe into Sixteene severall Hundreds, consequently into Parishes and Tythings as People did increase, and the Provinces were inhabited.

CHAP. IV.

ambassador to the Court of France. He obtained more distinction for aptitude in superintending extravagant banquets than for skill in diplomacy. He died in 1636.

³⁶⁰ This river is variously called the Monomack, Malamake, and Merrimack, which last title it still bears. Until the appearance of the Rev. Edmund F. Slatfer's work on Champlain, it was the gen-

erally accepted belief that it was the Rivière du Gast of the noted French navigator; but this theory can be no longer maintained. The aboriginal meaning of the name is the river of strong current, from *Merruk*, strong, and *Auke*, place. Its other title, Monomack, was from *Mono*, an island, and *Auke*, place; a name bestowed upon it on account of the many islands in the river.

[46]

CHAPTER IV.

*The manner and forme of the Government I have established
for the ordering of the Publique Affaires within my Prov-
ince of M A I N.*

First, in my absence I assigned one for my Lieutenant or Deputy, to whome I adjoyned a Chancellour for the determination of all differences arising between party and party, for *Meum & Tuum*, onely next to him I ordained a Treasurer for receipt of the Publique Revenue, to them I added a Marshall for the managing of the Militia, who have for his Lieutenant a Judge-Marshall, and other Officers to the Marshall Court, where is to be determined all Crimnall and Capitall matters, with other misdemeanours or contentions for matters of honour and the like: To these I appointed an Admirall with his Lieutenant or Judge, for the ordering and determining of Maritine Causes, whose Court is onely Capable of what passeth between party and party, concerning Trades and Contracts for Maritine Causes, either within the Province or on the Seas, or in forreigne parts, so far as concernes the Inhabitants, their Factors or Servants (as is usuall here in *England*: Next I ordered a Master of the Ordnance, whose office is to take charge of all the publique stores belonging to the Militia both for Sea and Land, to this I joyne a Secretary for the publique service of my selfe and Councell, these are the Standing Councillours, to whom is added eight Deputies to be elected by the Free-houlders of the severall Counties, as Councillours for the state of the Country,

Country, who are authorized by vertue of their places to sit in any of the aforesaid Courts, and to be assistants [47] to the Presidents thereof, and to give their opinions according to Justice, &c. That their is no matter of Moment can be determined oft, neither by my selfe, nor by my Lievetenant in my absence, but by the advice and assent of the whole body of the Councell, or the greater part of them, sufficiently called and summoned to the Assembly.

That no Judge or other Minister of State to be allowed of, but by the advice and assent of the said Councell, or the greater part of them, as before.

That no Alienation or sale of Land be made to any, but by their Councell and assent, be it by way of gift for reward, or service, or otherwise whatsoever.

That no Man to whom there hath beene any Grant past of any Free-hould, shall alienate the same without the assent and license of the said Councell, first had and obtained.

That in case any Law be to be Enacted, or repealed, Mony to be levyed, or forces raised for publique defence.

The summons thereof to the severall Bailywicks, or Countie, is to be issued out in my name, but with the consent of the said Councell, by vertue whereof, power is to be given to the Free-houlders of the said Counties respectively, to elect and choose two of the most worthy within the said County, as Deputies for the whole, to joyne with the Councell for performance of the service, for which they were called to that assembly, all appeals made for any wrong or injustice committed by any the severall officers of any the standing Courts of Justice, or authority of any other person or persons.

For the better ease of the Inhabitants of the severall Baily-wicks

wicks or Counties, there is assigned one Lievttenant, and eight Justices, to administer Justice for maintenance of the Publique Peace, according to the Lawes provided; These Officers and Justices to be chosen and allowed of by my selfe, or any Lievetenant in my absence, with the assent of the said Councell, belonging unto me.

[48] As for the Constables of the hundreds, Constables of the parishes, with the severall Tything Men of every parish to be chosen by the Lievttenant and Justices of the severall Counties to whom such oathes are to be administred, as by the Councell, and my selfe, or Lievttenant shall be thought fit

That every hundred shall have two head Constables assigned them, and every parish one Constable and four Tything Men, who shall give account to the Constable of the parish of the demeanour of the Housholders within his Tything, and of their severall families; the Constable of the parish shall render the same accompt fairely written to the Constables of the hundred, or some of them, who shall present the same to the Lievttenant and Justices at their next sitting, or before if cause require, and if it be matter within the power of the Lievttenant and Justices to determine of, then to proceed therein according to their said authority, otherwise to commend it to my selfe or my Lievttenant and Councell.

These few particulars I have thought fit to commend (as briefly as I can) unto all whom it may please to take notice thereof, heartily defirig they will not be spareing modestly to censure what they conceive proper to be amended, in that I chose rather to serve such whose wisedome, moderation, and judgements

judgements exceed my owne, them passionately or willingly to persif in my private fancy, or to be aggrieved at, or envy their better judgements.

[49]

C H A P T E R V.

My answer to some Objections.

BUT hearing that it is objected by many, if there be such hopes of Honour, Profit, and Content in those parts, how comes it to pafs that your self have not tasted thereof in all this time, having employed fo many of your owne fervants as by this discourse it feemes you have done, and yet nothing returned. As this objection is just, so I hope a reaſonable answer will satisfie any reaſonable man, whom I desire in the first place to consider, that I began when there was no hopes for the preſent but of loſſe, in that I was yet to find a place, and being found, it ſelfe was in a manner dreadfull to the behoulders, for it ſeemed but as a deſert Wildernesſe replete onely with a kind of *Savage* People, and overgrowne trees. So as I found it no meane matter to procure any to go thither much leſſe to reſide there; and thofe I ſent knew not how to ſubfift, but on the proviſions I furnished them with all.

Secondly I dealt not as Merchants or Tradeſ-men are wont, ſeeking onely to make mine owne profit, my ends being to make perfect the through diſcovery of the Countrey,³⁶¹

(wherein

³⁶¹ The full benefit of this ſtatement ſhould be accorded to Sir Ferdinand Gorges. In all his acts and in his variouſ writings, his motives appear to have been elevated above the mercenary ſpirit of his trading compatriots. His zeal for diſcovery and colonization was alwaſys conſpicuous, maintaining a clear glow even after the mifts of age had gathered about him

70 *A Description of New-England.*

(wherein I waded so far with the helpe of those that joyned with me) as I opened the way for others, to make their gaine, which hath been the meanes to encourage their followers to prosecute it to their advantage. Lastly I desire all that have estates here in *England* to remember, if they never come neare their People, to take accounts of their endeavours what they gaine by those courses.

Besides, when there is no settled Government or ordinary course of justice, which way is left to punish offenders or mispenders of their masters good, do not servants, nay [50] Sons the like in these parts, and are there not many that mispend the estates their Fathers left them, yet I have not sped so ill (I thank my God for it) but I have an house and home there; and some necessary meanes of profit by my Saw-Mills and Corne-Mills, besides some Annuall receipts sufficient to lay a foundation for greater matters, now the Government is Established.

Let not therefore my evill fortunes or hinderances be a discouragement to any, seeing there are so many presidents of the happy succeſſe of those that are their owne Stewards and disposers of their owne affaires in those parts, nay ſuch as I have ſent over at my owne charge at firſt, are now able to live and maintaine themſelves with plenty and reputation; So, as to doubt of well doing, for that another hath not proſpered, or to be abuſed by those he truſted, is to deſpair without a cauſe, and to looſe himſelfe without tryall. Thus muſch I preſume will clear the objection made by my example, and give comfort and courage to the induſtrious to follow the presidents of those more able to act their owne parts, than I have beeſe for cauſes ſpoken of.

CHAPTER VI.

The benefits that forreigne Nations have made by Plantation.

NOW I will onely remember some of the benefits that may arise by Plantations, and will begin with those Princes, our Neighbours, who have laid the way before us; but to speake of all the goods that may ensue, Plantations is a subject too large for my intention at this time, who do strive for brevity. By some of those Plantations made by our Neighbours, we see what greatnesse it hath brought them to, that have undertaken the same, as namely the King of *Spain* [51] and *Portugall*, the one settling himselfe in the parts of *America*, called the *West-Indies*, the other situate in *Brazill*,³⁶² the Southern part of the same Continent, and that part peopled in the infancy of that Plantation, as well with base and banished persons, as other noble and generous spirits, yet the successe thereof hath answered their expectation. Besides, we have seene what great riches were drawne by the *Portugalls*, by meanes of their severall plantations in the *East-Indies*, out of those vast and mighty Princes Territories, that filled the whole World with Spices, and other Aromatique Druggs, and excellent rare curiosities not vulgarly

³⁶² Brazil was discovered by Vincent Pinzon in 1500, and was first named the Land of the Holy Crofs by Pedro Alvarez, who in the same year suffered shipwreck upon its coast. It was explored by Vespucci four years afterwards, and in 1530 was divided by the King of Portugal into captaincies. The

spectacle of the wealth which Portugal and Spain were deriving from their distant possessions, Brazil and the West Indies, the latter discovered by Columbus in 1492, served as a constant irritant to Englishmen; and Sir Ferdinando Gorges but mildly reflects the general feeling of the time.

72 *A Description of New-England.*

vulgarly knowne to forreigne and former Ages in these Notherly parts of the World.

Those Rarities and Rich Commodities, invited some of our Nation to dive into farther search how we might partake thereof, without the favour of forreigne Princes, and having, after the way was once opened by private Adventurers, and some relish had of the proffits that might arise by those imployments, the Adventurers, Merchants, and others, noble spirits combined together to make it a more publique businesse, worthy the honour of this Nation, and reputation of the Undertakers, who having amassed a stock of many hundred thousand, entred so far into it, that the trade so began and continues to this present day, though not agreeable to the common hopes conceived thereof, but had the ground beene laid as was advised, it had growne to a far greater certainty than now it is like to have.

But the *Hollanders* better experienced in Martiall Affaires, were taught to know there is a difference betweene having gotten a trade and keeping it, that there is no safety in depending upon the will of another, when it is possible to securse themselves of what they had in possession, this made them fortifie where they found it convenient, and so to settle the forme of their Government and course of Trade upon such a foundation, as should promise continuall growth without diminution, upon change of humour of those they traded with, if left to their mercilesse discretion.³⁶³

That

³⁶³ Sir Ferdinando had in view the operations of the Dutch in the East Indies, especially the building of Batavia, the capital of Java, and their bold seizure of the coast of Brazil; hence he

feared the tenacious spirit of this enterprising people in the new world, but his fears proved in this case groundleſs. In the original the last "to" is repeated, evidently a typographical error.

[52] That by the same course they are like in short time to out our Nation of that little trade left us, who I could wish would yet in season seek how to settle a better foundation in such other places (as if I be not deceived) it is possible they may, thereby, not onely make good their present proffits, but advance it to a far greater, and make their attempts more honourable and more safe than now they are.

But seeing I am not able to perswade men of better judgement how to manage their practicall affaires, it shall content me to set out my opinion of the excellent use that may be made of those Plantations we have now on foot, especially that of *New-England*.

CHAPTER VII.

AS for those in the Islands of the *Virginians*, it is apparent they may be made of excellent use, if handled as they ought to be, both for the present and future, whereof I will speak no more, because so well known already: That of *Virginia* might very well brag of it selfe, if the Planters did but endeavour to settle some Plantations further up into the Maine, and to travaile in raisng such Commodities as that Clime will affoard for Trade and Commerce with their Neighbours and such of our owne Nation, as want what they have. For if I be not deceived, that Clime will affoard both Wines of severall natures, Flax, Hemp, Pitch, and Tarre, if not Sugars, and Cottons, for it cannot but be as proper for any of those commodities as any other country lying in the same Clime. But these particulars depend upon the wise-

dome of the Governours, and industry of the inhabitants to whom I commend the farther consideration and execution thereof as time and opportunity will give leave, not [53] doubting but if they follow the Sunnes setting, they will meet with better things than are yet spoken of, if they be sought for.

As for that of *New-England*, where I am chiefly interested, by reason of the time and meanes I have spent in the prosecution of that busynesse, it is easie to be obserued (partly by what I have said) what Commodities may be raised out of those Climes, and how miraculously it hath succeeded, and we may justly conclude it hath been brought to what it is, by the speciall Grace of *GOD* alone, the more to make illustration by the manifestation of his powerfull operation, in effecting for us what we could not expect from his Divine Goodnesse.

At our first discovery of those coasts, we found it very populous, the inhabitants stout and ware-like; the Countrey plentifull in graine and other fruits and roots, besides Deere of all sorts, and other Animals for foode, with plenty of Fish and Foule for their sustentation; so that they could not say (according to the manner of their living) they wanted any thing Nature did require.

As for their civill government, that part of the Country we first seated in, seemed to be Monarchicall by the name and title of a *Bashaba*,³⁶⁴ his extent was large, and had under him

³⁶⁴ Each tribe had its *sachem*, or as the tribes in the northern part of New England pronounced it, *sachemo*. Corrupted by the English, this word was metamorphosed into *sagamore*. Sir Fer-

dinando Gorges was doubtless mistaken in supposing the word which he spells here *Bashaba*, but in another place *Bashabas*, to be a title instead of a name. As before stated, a powerful chief of the Penobscot

him many great Subjects, such as were Allecanry³⁶⁵ with them to the Warre, some thousand some fifteen hundred Bow-Men, some more others lesse, these they called *Sagamores*.

This *Bashaba* had many enemies, especially those to the East and North-East, whome they called *Tarentines*, those to

Penobscot tribe bore the name *Bessabes*, *Betifabes*, or *Bashabas*; and hearing his name frequently used by the Indians, the English adopted the idea which was consonant with their own conception of government, that the name was a common title of a great monarch, just as the title King, Emperor, or Tzar, was given to European rulers: while in fact it was but the name of a Penobscot chief. A careless reading of Captain John Smith's account has led Gorges and other writers to make this supposed monarch rule over all the tribes westerly from the Penobscot to and even beyond the Piscataqua; yet Smith, in enumerating the various sachems between and near these rivers, only says that "they hold the bashabes of the Penobscot the chief and greatest among them." There is nothing, however, to show that these chiefs were under monarchs who bore a common title; indeed, all that we know of the Indian character militates against such a theory. These people were broken up into petty tribes constantly at war with one another. Fiercely selfish and jealous, they seem to have possessed no purpose which could unite them together to promote the common welfare. But that the word *Bessabes* or *Bashabas* was the name and not the title of a chief of the Penobscots, we learn both from Lescarbot and Biard. Says the former of these writers, who calls him by his name, *Bessabes*, and tells us that his successor's name was *Asticou*, a brave and redoubtable warrior: "A la place desquels, avoit été élu par les Sauvages un nommé *Bessabes*, lequel de-

puis notre retour a été tué par les Anglois et au lieu de icelui ont fait venu un Capitaine de dedans les terres nommé *Asticou*, homme grave, vaillant et redouté." Father Biard also, in his *Relation*, speaks of this chief as follows: "Ils nous offroient encors que s'il nous plaisoit de demeurer avec eux, ils estoient trois Capitaines *Bessabes*, *Aguigueson* & *Asticou*; desquels un chacun prédroit pour sa part dix de nos troupe (puis que nous restions trente), & nous nourriroient jusques à l'an suivant, quand les navires François arriveroient à la côte." These extracts, aside from other considerations, ought, it would seem, to dispose of the theory hitherto held, that a great Indian monarch entitled a *Bashabas* once reigned over the tribes of Maine. *Vide Histoire de la Nouvelle France, par Marc Lefcarbot, Vol. II. p. 534 et seq., Paris, 1866; Relation de la Nouvelle France, etc. Faîte par le Pierre Biard, a Lyon, MDCXVI. p. 35.*

³⁶⁵ That is, in alliance with them. The *Tarentines* were the fiercest of the eastern tribes and dwelt along the seacoast north of the Penobscot. The *Sockbigones*, as Gorges calls them, or, as they have been denominated by other writers, the *Sokokis*, dwelt about the mouth and along the shores of the Saco River. A considerable settlement of these Indians was at *Pigwacket*, the *sandy land*, now the site of *Fryeburg*. Both the *Tarentines* and the *Sokokis* belonged to the people known as the *Abenakis*, i. e., *Eastlanders*, or, according to *Vetromile*, *Eastern fathers*.

76 *A Description of New England.*

to the West and South-West, were called *Sockbigones*, but the *Tarentines* were counted a more war-like and hardy People, and had indeed the least opportunity to make their attempts upon them, by reason of the conveniency and opportunity of the Rivers and Sea, which affoarded a speedy passage into the *Bashabaes* Country, which was called *Moasham*,³⁶⁶ and that part of the Country which lay between the *Sockbigones* Country and *Moasham* was called *Apislama*:³⁶⁷ The *Massachisans*³⁶⁸ and *Bashabaes* were sometimes Friends and sometimes Enemies as it fell out, but the *Bashaba* and his

[54] People seemed to be of some eminence above the rest, in all that part of the Continent; his owne chiefe abode was not far from *Pemaquid*, but the Warre growing more and more violent between the *Bashaba* and the *Tarentines*, who (as it seemed) presumed upon the hopes they had to be favoured of the *French* that were seated in *Canada* their next neighbours, the *Tarentines* surprised the *Bashaba*, and flew³⁶⁹ him and all his People near about him, carrying away his Women, and such other matters as they thought of value; after his death the publique busynesse running to confusion for want of an head, the rest of his great *Sagamores* fell at variance among themselves, spoiled and destroyed each others people and provision, and famine took

hould

³⁶⁶ Moasham, as Gorges calls it, is denominated by Smith *Mochoquen*, and is doubtless the mysterious word which we are told in *Purchas* was the ancient title of Maine; namely, *Mawoooshen*. It is here confined properly to the domains of the Penobscot Indians.

³⁶⁷ This seems to refer to the country about Portland, including Cape Elizabeth and the coast east of the Presumpscot.

³⁶⁸ The Massachusets Indians.

³⁶⁹ Lefcarbot charges the English with having slain *Bessabes*, which he would naturally have done had any Englishmen been with the *Tarentines* or near enough even to have incited them to war. This statement, with the French accounts, fully identifies the Penobscot chief with the mythical monarch of Maine.

ould of many, which was feconded by a great and generall plague, which so violently rained for three yeares together, that in a manner the greater part of that Land was left desert without any to disturb or appease our free and peaceable possession thereof, from whence we may justly conclude, that *GOD* made the way to effect his work according to the time he had assignd for laying the foundation thereof. In all which there is to be noted, the next of the Plantations before spoken of, were not performed but by Warre and Slaughter, and some of them with Murther of so many millions of the Natives, as it it is horror to be spoken of, especially being done by the hands of Christians, who alone of all People in the World professe the gaining of all Soules to *GOD* onely by preaching the Gospell of *CHRIST JESUS* our Sole Redeemer, and all this done, as being presented, persecuted, not persecuting; but let us be silent and confess, that that is best done that *GOD* doth himselfe, and next we must know, that what he suffers to be done, is not for us rashly to censure, but to give him the Glory for all, whose will we desire may be done hereon as, &c.

Yet I trust we may be humbly bold to believe that when God manifesteth his assistance unto his people, he gives them cause to believe he will not leave them till they leave him.

[55]

CHAPTER VIII.

The benefits already received, and what Time and Industry may produce.

AS for the benefit which may arise by such Plantations especially those our Nation is in travaile with at present, first we find by daily experience what numbers of shipping and Marriners are employed thereby. Next how many thousands of the subjects are transported into those parts, that otherwise might have settled themselves under foreigne States to the prejudice and hinderance of our owne Manufacturers said overthrow of that kind of trade, whereas by planting where they do, that is not only prevented, but new Trades impossibily to be raised. Further, it prevents our neighbours from occupying those territories that so diligently (according to their powers) sought to possesse themselves thereof, who by that meanes might easilly (as it were) besiege us on all fides, that we should neither be Southward, nor follow our fishing Craft in *New-Found-Land*; or upon those coasts, but by their permission.

But the same advantage by means of those Plantations lyes now in our power, if the King shall have occasion to make use thereof; besides so large a continent abounding with so many excellent Lakes, of so mighty extent, from whence issue so many rivers, such variable kinds of foiles, rich in fructification of all manner of seeds or graine, so likely to abound in mineralls of all sorts, and other rich gaine of commodities

modities not yet to be known, besides Furrs of several kinds, both usefull and Merchantable, proper for foreigne Markets.

[56]

C H A P T E R I X.

Shewing more particularly the honor, content, and profit of those undertakings.

TO descend from those generalls to more particulars, what can be more pleasing to a generous nature then to be excercised in doing publique good. Especially when his labour and industry tends to the private good and reputation of himselfe and posterity and what monument so durable, as erecting of Houses, Villages, and Townes; and what more Pious then advancing of Christian Religion amongst People, who have not known the excellency thereof, but seeing works of Piety and publique good, are in this age rather commended by all, then acted by any; let us come a little nearer to that which all harken unto, and that forsooth is profit.

Be it so, art thou a Labourer, that desirest to take paines for the maintenance of thy selfe, the imployments in Plantations gives the not onely extraordinary wages, but opportunity to build some House or Cottage, and a proportion of Land agreeable to thy fortunes to set thy selfe, when either lamenesse or other infirmities seize on thee, hast thou a Wife and a Family, by plantation thou buildest, inclosest, and dost labour to live, and enjoy the fruits thereof with plenty, multiplying thy little meanes for thy Childrens good when thou art no more.

But art thou of a greater fortune and more gloriously spirited

80 *A Description of New-England.*

ited, I have tould thee before what thou may'st be assured of, whereby it may appeare thou shalt not want meanes nor opportunity to exercise the excellency of thine own justice, and

[57] ingenuity to govern and act the best things, whether it be for thy selfe or such as live under thee, or have

their dependency, or hopes of happinesse upon thy worth, and vertue as their cheife; neither are these parts of the World voide of opportunity to make a further discovery into the vast Territories, that promiseth so much hopes of honour and profits (formerly spoken of) to be raised to posterity by the meanes and opportunity of those great and goodly Lakes and Rivers, which invite all that are of brave Spirits to seeke the extent of them. Especially since it is already known that some of these Lakes containe fifty or sixty leagues in length, some one hundred, some two hundred, others four or five hundred, the greatest abounding in multitude of Islands fit for habitation the land on both fides, especially to the Southward fertile, and pleasant, being between the degrees of forty foure and forty five of latitude, and to the west of these Lakes that are now knowne, they passe by a maine River to another Sea, or Lake; which is conceived to disembogue into the South-Seas, where the *Savages* report, that they have a Trade with a Nation, that comes once a yeare unto them with great ships, and brings shooes and buskins, kettles, and hatchets, and the like, which they barter for Skinnes, and Furrs of all kindes. The people being cloathed with long robes, their heads bald or shaven, so as it is conceived they must be *Catayons* or *Chinawais*³⁷⁰

whatsoever

³⁷⁰ That is, the people of Cathay or Northern China. This was in the line of the common belief that it was possible to gain intercourse with India and China by

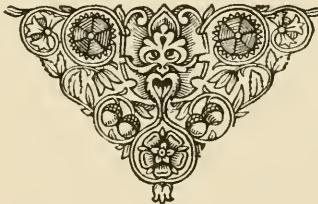
whatsoever they be, were the strength of my body and meanes answerable to my heart, I would undertake the discovery of the uttermost extent thereof and whosoever shall effect the same, shall both eternize his vertues, and make happy such as will endeavour to partake thereof.

But I end and leave all to him, who is the onely author of all Goodnesse, and knowes best his owne time to bring his will to be made manifest, and appoints his instruments for the accomplishing thereof, to whose pleasure it becomes every one of us to submit our selves, as to that mighty G O D, and Great and Gracious L O R D, to whome all G L O R Y doth belong.

FINIS.

by traversing the continent westward. The Indians, becoming acquainted with this belief, naturally fell in with it, and, encouraged by their eager questioners, romanced on the subject *ad libitum*. It has remained, however, for our more profaic times to realize this dream of the past, doubtles indulged in through life

by Sir Ferdinando Gorges, by establishing intercourse between the dwellers of our western shores and the *Catayons* and *Chinawaines*, who indeed, “clothed with long robes, their heads bald or shaven,” come in great ships and exchange their commodities for our own.



A Breefe Answer
TO
CERTAYNE FALSE, SLANDEROUS, AND
IDLE OBJECTIONS

MADE AGAYNST

S^r FERD. GORGES, KNIGHTE.

Written in the Gatehouse
By SIR FERDINANDO GORGES,
JUNE 14th, 1601.



*A breefe answer to certayne false, slanderous, and idle objections made agaynst S^r Ferd. Gorges, knighte, as if he had ben a man of purpose employed to practize the ruine of the late Earle of Essex, playnly shewinge the untruthe and impossibility therof. Written in the Gatehouse.*³⁷¹

*To the ho^u and discrete who ar nether partiall in affection
nor voyde of understandinge.*

JN this my discourse, I coulde have ben contented to have intreated my ho^u and worthy frenndes (who have always knowne mee by many likely-hoods and probabilityes, more then in the discourse it selfe I shall speake of) to implore theyr labors to have satisfyed any reasonable man for the disproveinge of that w^{ch} is so comonly and flaunderously bruted of mee: but that I know it needelesse, in as muche as every wise and vertuouse nature, duly wayinge what is sayd wth every circumstance, will not of the love they beare to vertue it selfe, seeke to approve and manifeste theyr owne wifdoms and generouse mindes by contradictinge the vanity of the

³⁷¹ *Vide* Cotton MSS., British Museum, *gia*, published by the Society of Antiquaries, London, Vol. XXXIII. pp. 247-261. Julius F., VI. fol. 423; and the *Archaeolo-*

the worlde, or condemninge the base natures of those that be so lavish in censuring of any whome they have knowne or hearde to have alwayes helde the reputa^{cō}n of an honest man, espetially at that time when his case is such that hee nether can or may make a free answere for the approba^{cō}n of his innocency therein. I am not ignorant, how the dis temper of the time hath caused the idle humors of men's braynes, that ar almoste in a frenzy wth the mallice of theyr hartes, to disgeast it selfe into theyr untamed tongues, and now findinge a subiect of whome they may freely speake, they spare not to make apparent the vildnes of theyr natures. An other kinde of creature I have heard of that will heare nothinge but wth theyr eyes, see nothinge but wth their eares, for what shaddow they see they will force it to be a substance, and in som cases all substance must bee but shaddowes; so heddye or seneles the common people ar, carefull only to swi^me wth the streame, and will not bee capable of understandinge themselves, or sensible of any other kinde of vertue in others, who (although they cannot deny the truthe, or enter into the reason for w^{ch} things were don, yet will they say somethinge to ease theyr stomacks, and speake like themselves) will curse and rayle at the innocent, as if theyr concaytes were gospells, or the reports (w^{ch} they have uncertaynly receaved) oracles. But I know the ho^u, wise, and vertuouse, as they ar sparinge to censure evell of a well deservinge minde, so can they, and will, (I ashure my selfe,) both judge and speake the truthe, to the approvinge of my honest affection to my deceased freinde (howsoever I may seeme to acknowledge my selfe to have forgotten my duety to her Ma^{ty}, for w^{ch} my offence I acknowledge my selfe to have
receaved

receaved mercy and justice). To this I know som booke-wise gallant may happely carpe at my labors, bycause it wantethe ether forme, eloquent wordes, wise sentences, or any other such like exceptions, w^{ch} (I confesse) may be justly taken unto it; but my hope is that the worthy and those of judgmente will looke into the matter and fence and beare wth these faultes, and also pardon these defectes of my rude and harfhe manner of writinge; remembryng it is the labor but of a playne souldier, and on that is no scholler, who is desyrous only to deliver the truthe in its owne nature and kynde for the satisfyinge of his ho^u and privat freindes, and not the travayle of a cunninge sophiste y^t will take upon him to make white black, and black white; such learninge I never affected, if I had, my leasure would never have afforded mee time to practise it.

Peruse this therfor wth patience, I pray you, and censure not of on parte untill ye have read the whole, for each doubte that may arise will be answered wth that w^{ch} doth follow; and the heavenly God open your eyes, and give y^r heartes understandinge that ye may sensibly feele (w^{ch} I doubt not but you will when you have read that w^{ch} followethe) the wronges w^{ch} I have receaved by those false imputacions wherwthall I am charged; in the meane time affisste mee, I desyre you, wth your prayers to the Almighty, that he will give mee patience in this my untimely afflictions to indure unto the ende that his divine pleasure will lay upon mee, to whose æternal protection I hartely commende y^u. From the Gatehouse, the 14th of June, 1601.

CAP. I.

CAP. I.

The unlikelyhood and impossibility that I could consente to the betrayinge of my L. of Essex.

GREAT is the disadvantage that a man hathe, who is to justify his innocency in thoſe thinges for w^{ch} he is condemned by the worlde, w^{ch} for the moſt parte is blinded in affection, or ignorant of the truthe, for whatſoever hee can ſay or write is read or hearde wth a præjudicate opinion, every on beleeving that a man is bounde to ſpeakē for himſelfe, or to excuse his owne faultes. Notwithſtandinge, ſithence the truthe bearethe no ſhame, or needethe to be deckd wth no colours but its owne, never bluſhinge, how diſgracefully ſoever reſpected, I offer the examinaſon of that w^{ch} followethe to the wife and diſcreete, who will (I doubt not) confeſſe, if I weare as able to make it appeare that I did not forget my duety to her Ma^y, to whome I muſt accknowleſe it was moſte due, as I am able to prove I diſcharged my faythfull love to my Lo. of Eſſex, I ſhould not need to be now behouldinge to any for my life, or indure y^t miſerable affliction I doe, by w^{ch} meanes I have brought my ſelfe and my eſtate to ruine, how innocent ſoever my harte were from intendinge any evell, or knowinge any evell to be intended or purpoſed to the perſon or authority of her Highnes.

And I hope no mā did ever esteeme mee to be ether a foole or a mad man; but if I had conſented to the ruine of the Earle of Eſſex I had ſhewed myſelfe to have ben bothe.

For

For was there ever any that had his witts or understandinge that would enterprise such a matter and not compounde for his rewarde, or at the least be freed himselfe from all after daungers? And the world may see that nether of these I have don; and unto mee I am assured it is to apparenre, for I do continually feele the heavy indignacion of her Ma^{ty} justly to lye upon mee; and besides that I have all places of com-maunde and commodity taken from mee to the undoinge of my selfe and mine, my person is still detayned in prison where how longe I shall remaine God only dothe knowe, or after what manner I shall com out, when I do, whether as a banished, a confined, or a dead man, but if otherwise, I must accknowledege it to bee more of her Ma^{ties} gratiouse and infinite mercy then of my merit, or by mee to be ex-pected, by reason of any promise or composition that ever I ether made, propounded, concluded, or thought on. And for matter of rewarde I am so far from expectinge any as I shall thinke myselfe infinitely happy to injoy my life and liberty, wth leave only to seeke my fortune where I shall finde best meanes to make it. But if any thinge had ben voluntarilie don by mee to the prejudice of the Earle, shurely this needed not to have befallen mee. If it be objected, notwthstandinge, all this misery I suffer is but a color to blinde the worlde wthall, I must answer, I know my reputa-cōn and estate doth not depende upon the vulgar or greater parte of the people, but only upon her Ma^{ties} gratiouse fa-vor, and the estimacion and regarde theyr Lo^{pps} have of mee, whome if I could have satisfyed would have ben a sufficent warrante and protection to have avowed my proceedinge whatever I had don in that behalfe. And if I have no neede

to make use of any such polefy in respect of satisfyinge the worlde, muche lesse have those by whose authority I still remayne in durance. Therfor out of question it is not don for polefy nor indured of mee for pleasure, but only inflicted for a ponishmente for my offence. Agayne, let them behoulde (that this thinke) who is in possession of all that ever I had, and they shall finde that they ar the freindes and allyes of those, whome it is faide I did practise wthall. And doth any man thinke so great a wronge could be offered mee, if I had so well deserved as it is fayde or imagined I did, by bringinge to lighte and ruin so daungerouse a practise, and so great an enemy, as that was beleevered the Earle woulde have ben? No, no, it standethe not wth nature to endure, if I could will or chuse, therfor no reason to beleeve it.

Further, I desyre that all men shoulde know, that I am not ignorante what it is and how unworthy an enterprise it were, for any of reputacion to accepte or undertake to be treacherouse where hee pretendethe faythfull and unfayned love, and I will speake thus much for my owne parte, nether to deceave others nor to flatter myselfe, ther was yet never any man to whome I protested love unto that afterwardes I could possibly hate, though I cannot as an only freinde love many at once, nor yet like him that doth unjustly hate the person of love, much lesse condisente to the betrayinge of him, to such as were his enemyes, and to mee no assured freindes.

Lastly, in this my discourse it is to be noted, that whatsoever I did confess or could have don was but of matter acted and consulted of from the laste of January 1601 to the 9th of February 1601; and that I had not hearde from my Lorde in 2 yeares before, till the letter hee sente for mee

to

to com upp. Also, that hee never unfoulded any thinge to mee but his purpose and a defyre to be free and secure from the malice and powre of his private enemyes. That hee had matter sufficiente to penne them from the person and p̄fence of her Ma^{ty} whensoever hee should have meanes to have a free and safe accesse to her himselfe. And I, perceavinge that hee intended to make his way by force wherwth to refiste any opposition of (thoſe he called) his enemyes, before I would joyne with him I expected and conditioned to affuse me uppō his soule and salvaçon hee intended no p̄judice to the person of her Ma^{tye}; ſecondly, not to take by force or unjust meanes the life of any, but to proceede in the course of his complaynte to the Queene and pſecution of his enemyes accordinge to the lawe and justice of the lande. Thus much his Lo^{pp} in effeſte acknowledged at the barr the day of his arraynmente; wherfor if (as it is maniſt) I knew nether of his intente before the instante, nor perſwaded him to any treasonable action, how could I bee imployed by any to practize upon him as it is ſayd (though unprobably) I was?

The contrary will appeare when the truthe (that for a ſeafon may be fickle but yet will never dye) ſhall com to lighte, for I always advised him, and bound him by oathes, to his allegiance, ſhewed him in his extremity the ſafeſt course, although hee could not lay hould on it; but if I had ben imployed to practife upon him, I might have found meanes to have ben continually at his hande, nether would I have heald him to any justifiable a course, nor ever ad- vized him to keepe himſelfe from any lawfull advantage his enemyes might have agaynst him, and evermore to deale upon

upon good groundes, and never to violate ether lawe or conscience.

Howbeit I heare that S^r Christop. Blunte hathe confessed former practises and purposes more then ever I heard of, or would have condiscended unto if I had ben accquaynted wth them; wherfor (if so it were) I was deceaved by his oathe and protestacon, and not hee by mee for any thinge I did. And I assure myselfe that when the Almighty God his will is to bringe to lighte the truthe, the worlde will confesse I have ben most unjustly and falsely belyed by those reportes that have ben so confidently bruted of me. In the meane time, I pray you to examine the particulars, wth my answers and y^r judgmentes,³⁷² and afterwardes speake accordinge to y^r vertues and noblenes of your mindes in the defence of the innocent what you thinke or knowe.

CAP. II.

The cause and manner of my goinge to S^r Walter Rawly, and my conference w^t him, not any wayes pjudicall to the Earle his proceedinges.

TO com to the particulars of those objections wherby it seemethe to be most manifeste I was employed to practice agaynst the Earle. First, I will beginne wth that conference I had that Sunday morninge wth S^r Wal. Rawligh, at what time, it is sayde, I did laye open all his counells and purposes. The likelyhood and truthe of this is best

³⁷² The examination of Sir Ferdinando Gorges here referred to, as well as that of the other friends of Effex, may be found in the Public Records Office, London, and a copy in the Brit-

ish Museum; Add. MSS. 4128, fol. 23. The copy of the examination of Gorges which follows this *Breefe Answer*, is from the manuscript in the British Mufeum.

best to bee understande if you consider the cause of my goinge unto him and the manner therof.

First, I was sent unto that morninge by S^r Walt. Rawligh to com in all haste to Durram Howse, to speake wth him, and by any meanes I was to go by water. But before I wente, I advertised my Lord of as muche, shewinge him wthall the direction and manner how I was assignd to goe (w^{ch} I needed not to have don if I had purposid any treachery), who upon councell and deliberation was willinge **I** should goe, but directed to speake wth him upon the Thames, the w^{ch} I obserued, and to take wth mee a guarde for the securinge of my returne, doubting least any thinge might bee purposid for the impeachinge therof.

Next is to be confidered the time, w^{ch} was full nine of the clock before I went from Essex Howse, before w^{ch} it is well knowne that her Ma^{ty} and the Ll^{ds} were advertised of my Lord his preparation (though the particular of his intente was not knowne), and had given order for the drawinge in of men from the villages about the city for the present defence of her Ma^{ties} person, and resolvd that certayne of the Lordes of the Councell should go to Essex House, to assaye if, by commande or admonishmente, the presente fury could have ben appeased, or at least deferred, till better provision of offence or defence might bee made, and those LL. were arrived at Essex Howse comminge by lande as foone as myselfe that come and went by water, the w^{ch} could not bee upon any resolution taken of any conference wth S^r Walt. Raleigh, for they were departed from the Courte before hee could bee arrived there. Also, in the morninge before this ther had ben a coīaundemente given to the City, that every

every man should bee in a reddines both in person and armes, but notwthstandinge to keepe wthin his howse, till they receaved further directions or coīaundement what to doe.

As for the conference that passed between S^r Walt. Rawley and myselfe, it was only this, I protest to the Almighty God. When his boate came to mee (he beinge all alone, and I havinge wth mee two Genf) he toulde mee that hee had sente for mee to admonish mee to make all haste out of the Towne downe to my charge, for that there was a warrant out for the sendinge mee to the Fleete.³⁷³ For his kinde advertisement I gave him thankes, but tould him wthall (for that I knew the present occasion would presently discover it selfe) that it came to late, for I had ingaged my selfe in an other matter; hee farther inquiringe of mee what it was, I told him ther were two thousand Gentlemē that had resolved that daye to live or dye free men. Hee pronounced unto mee, hee heard not of it untill that morninge, but did not see what they were able to do agaynst the Queenes authority. My answere was, it was the abusinge of that, by him and others, that made so many honest men reslove to seeke a reformaçon therof. His replye was, that no man was wthout

³⁷³ Stow tells us that this prisone standing in Fleet Lane, now Fleet Street, was "so called of the Fleet of Water running by it, and sometime flowing about it." He also says that it was "reckoned the best Prison of any in this City, for good Rooms, and other Conveniences, the benefit of an open Yard and Garden, inclofed with a very high Wall and Fence. To this Prison, Persons are committed for Contempt of

Orders &c. in the High Court of *Chancery*; or upon Debt, when they by a Writ of *Habeas Corpus* remove themselves thither from another Prison." This old prison was consumed in the great fire of London, and no picture of it seems to have been preserved. *Vide A Survey of the Cities of London and Westminster*, by John Stow. London, 1720, Vol. I. pp. 256, 280.

wthout a colour for theyr intente, and therfor advised mee to looke unto my selfe, and to remember my duety and allegiance. I answered, “I knew not any mā that did not more respect his allegiance then his life, as the ende would make apparent;” and thus hee parted to the Courte and I to Effex Howse.

In all this what was by mee discovered or don that became not a free spirit, or wherin did it give prejudice to my Lorde his proceedinges? If it bee demaunded of mee why I did not take S^r Walt. Rawley then; — First, it was not a matter I ever purposed, though many vaynely perswaded mee so to doe; secondy, I never held it an acte fittinge amongst mē to betray any that repose trust in us, and hee puttinge himselfe into my handes, wth what honesty could I have avowed so barbarous a deede, unlesse hee had given mee the first occasion by violent deedes and unkinde words, for ether of the w^{ch} I was both resolved and prepared. And at my returne I delivered unto my Lorde particularly what had passed between S^r W. R. and my selfe, all w^{ch} he receaved wth his applause and good likinge, as it is to be testifiyd by those that were then present and yet alive.

CAP. III.

The delivery of the Lordes was by the Earles allowance and direction whē they had no hope to make any other benefit of the.

A S concerninge my delivery of the LL. of the councell, w^{ch} if I had not don (as it is sayd) the Earle might have made what composition hee had listed, both for himselfe

selfe and others, it beinge a matter of the greatest consequence, and most likelihood of truthe, I thought it fit to give the more particular accouete of my doinge in that behalfe, shewing (wthall) bothe the reasons and neceffity that that advise and resolution was to be followed; therby approvinge my purpose unto my Lorde and the rest to be good, and it was the only councell to be followed, and absolute hope that remayned for him, in so great an extremity.

For, when I saw that in all likelihood and reason ther was no hope left for him to recover his owne howse, perceavinge that all the portes and passages were guarded and defended, and findinge that diverse, both nobles and others, had quited him, som of the best that remayned devisinge by what meanes to shifte for themselves, all w^{ch} I was nether so voyde of judg-
ment or understandinge but did well know and perceave; in consideration wherof, when wee came to the chayne at Lud-gate, and saw it defended wth men armed and in good order, havinge their officers and theyr heades, and seeminge no meanes that wee had sufficient to force them, I thought it best to attempte som other course, and first I made tryall, by fayre language to Sir John Lucy³⁷⁴ (that had commande of the troopes w^{ch} defended that place), to give my Lorde a free passage; in the w^{ch} not prevaylinge, I returned to my Lorde, to shew him how impossible it was for him to passe
that

³⁷⁴ Sir John Levison, as the name is spelt both in Camden's *History of Elizabeth* and the *Sydney Papers*, com-manded the Queen's Guard, and pre-vented the return of Essex to Essex House by stretching a chain acros the street near the west gate of St. Paul's Church, and opposing his passage with

troops. He was subsequently an im-portant witness in the Earl's trial. Sir John's name is spelt, by Sir Robert Cecil in his correspondence, Lufon, which per-haps gives a clew to its pronunciation. If pronounced "Lufon," with the stress upon the first syllable, Sir Ferdinando might easily have mistaken it for "Lucy."

that way, wth the meanes he had, as also to know what other resolution or course hee woulde take; to whome havinge delivered my opinion, I gave him further to understande what I thought fit as the lafte and only hope for him to depende on, remembringe him that now hee was to make benefit of the Lords that were in his howse, wthall, if so it pleased him, I would attempte to go alone unto them, and wth them to go to her Ma^{ty}, by whose meanes and follicitaⁿcon only ther was hope shee might be drawne to some tolerable condicⁿons of peace.

To this my opinion I was perswaded by many reasons; as, first, I knew into a greater inconvenience hee could not fall then at the present hee was in, seeing that all hopes hee depended on had fayled him, notwthstandinge I knew the affliction and feare that was apprehended (through the opinion that was conceaved of the greatnes of my Lordes meanes to bee far more then it was) might bee no small reason to perswade an acception of submission wth security rather then to hazarde a course daungerous wth doubt of succeſſe; and to bringe this to passe I made the leſſe doubt, if I might my ſelfe have com in a place to have delivered my Lordes tale, or at the leaſte ſo far foorth to have poſſeſſed her Ma^{ty} of the cauſes that moved my Lord to this his attempte, and the reaſons that drewe the noblemen and gen^t to joyne wth him, wherby the proſequutinge of it wth extremity might have ben deferrd, or the offence of the reſt made more excusabla; ether of theſe, as occaſions ſhould have offred, I purpoſed to have proſecuted, as afterwardeſ in the beſt fashion I coulde I diſ, as it is well knowne to ſom of the Lordes.

Now I was the more conſiſtent in this my opinion, out of

98 *Breefe Answer to Objections made*

the observation I had made of the unwillingnes of the people's dispositions to offer any thinge agaynst my Lorde or any of his, notwthstandinge any proclamations or comiaunde that had ben given, wherby I was out of doubt if my Lord coulde (as my hope and advise was to him to do) but have kept himselfe but three houres longer in the city (wher I was shure his dispayre could not bee so easily perceaved) to have brought ether all or the most of this that I have spoken of to passe. And of this my opinion I was not much deceaved, as heereafter you shall perceave. Heereupon, after som doubt that my Lord had made of the impossibility of my recoveringe Essex Howse, and som hope that hee sawe was to be expected, if I could get thither, by that meanes, hee gave mee directions to goe, referringe the manner of my proceedinge to my owne discretion, the time nor place not permittinge any large instructions or directions to be given; wheruppō I departed, havinge only used the name of my Lord Cheefe Justice ³⁷⁵ unto him, mindinge indeede that none shoulde have gon but him. But when I arived at Essex Howse, and had made reporte of as much as I thought fit to his Lor^{pp}, and had desyred him to be goinge, hee refused it, except my Lorde Keeper ³⁷⁶ might also go wth him; wherupon I, that knew ther were no delayes to bee used at that time, made replye therunto, as a matter so intended, and therfor desyred theyr Lord^{pps} more at large, in the boate, what was my Lorde his petition and desyre to obtayne from
her

³⁷⁵ Sir John Popham.

³⁷⁶ Sir Thomas Egerton was made Lord Keeper of the Great Seal in 1596, and Lord High Chancellor in 1603, at which time he was created Baron Ellef-

mere. In 1616 he was made Viscount Brackley. He died at York House March 15th, 1617, at the age of seventy-seven, and was buried at Doddleton, in Cheshire.

her Ma^{ty}, as also the particular reas ons that moved both him-selfe and the rest of the nobility to undertake that course they had begunne.

When theyr Lor^{pps} were setted in the boate, wher my Lo. of Worcester⁸⁷⁷ was also, I first, as breefelye as I coulde, deliv ered unto them what a number of people there were assembled in the behalfe of my Lo. of Essex, and the doubt what the succeſſe heeroſ might bee, wth all the daunger that might infue if my Lorde were forced to make his paſſage over the belly of the ſubiect, to give himſelfe a free and ſafe acceſſe to the ſoverayne Ma^{ty}, and therfor that all industry and indeavor to prevente the on and the other was to bee uſed, no delayes to bee made, nor neece poyn tes to bee ſtoode upon; that theyr Lor^{pps}, as the fathers of the kingdom, under her Highnes, were now both to ſhew theyr wiſdoms and authoretyes.

Then my next petiſon was, that her Ma^{ty} might know from my Lorde the occaſion that forced him and his freindes to joyne themſelves together in this loathſom extreame and laſt refuge of armes, notwthſtandinge if my Lorde and they had ben miſtaken by any falſe informaſon, that then all matters might eaſily have ben pacifyed.

In

⁸⁷⁷ Edward, the fourth Earl of Worcester. He is extolled by Naunton in his *Fragmenta Regalia* as the moft accomplished of the courtiers of Elizabeth in feats of arms and horſemanship. He was, moreo ver, a wife counſellor, and was appointed Lord Privy Seal by King James. This was an office of great truſt and reſponſibility, as it was the duty of the keeper of the King's private ſeal to examine all important instruments requiring the royal ſigna-

ture, and to call the King's attention to anything therein not in accordance with the law of the realm. It was neceſſary to the validity of an instrument that it ſhould be ſigned by the King and have his private ſeal affixed by the Lord Keeper of the Privy Seal, after which it paſſed to the Lord Keeper of the Great Seal; who having affixed to it the public ſeal of the realm, its validity was complete. The Earl died on March 3d, 1619.

In the meane time, that her Ma^{ty} would be pleased for the present pacifyinge of the fury of men enraged, as also the security of her owne person and preservation of that blood the w^{ch} was like to be spilte, to graunte a gratiouse assurance that my Lord and the rest might bee free from excepcione of that dayes attempte, and that shee would bee pleased to graunte her gratiouse promise to heare wth her owne eares both what hee was able to say in his owne justificacon and excuse of his freindes, to whose mercifull feete both hee and they desyred in all humility to throwe downe themselves, so as they might not bee persecuted by any injurious suggestions of theyr privat enemyes for what they had don that day, to prevente whose indire&t dealinges they had don as they did.

All this theyr Lor^{pps} assured mee to acquaynt her Ma^{ty} wthall, by the w^{ch} time wee were arived to the Courte; then they required mee to follow them, w^{ch} I did into the privy chamber, and theyr Lor^{pps} goinge to the Queene I sollicited what they had undertaken so effectually, as I perceaved by those that came up and downe, that ther was som reason to hope of the good succeffe therof, the rather for that I understand my Lorde Admirall ³⁷⁸ and Mr. Secretary ³⁷⁹ were sent for to resolve on some course to bee taken therin, but at this instante Mr. Secretary receaved advertisemente that my Lorde was fledd unto his howse, wherupon it was apparent that then the Earle was at her Mat^yes mercy wthout any conditions, and I was instantly committed to prysyon, where ever since I have remayned. Thus y^u have seene that my deliv ery

³⁷⁸ Lord Charles Howard, of Effingham, and Earl of Nottingham.

³⁷⁹ Sir Robert Cecil.

ery of the L^{ds} was upon advise and direction of my Lorde himselfe, out of the understanding and hope of good thereby to have befallen him, and it was that time when ther was no hope for him to make any other benefit of them, himselfe havinge reason to despaire the recovery of his howse, and indeede no reason to attempte the goinge thither, knowing if hee were driven out of the city his howse could afforde no meanes of defence, and therfor it is falsely sayde that I did it either dishonestly or treacherously, as to all men of honor or wisdom by this it may appeare.

CAP. IV.

It is manifest in all reason that if I had not dd^t the L^{ds} yet they could not have ben profitable to the Earle.

BUT, admit the Lords had not ben delivered, what hope was ther in reason for him to have receaved any benefit by them? for ther was none of y^m but was much respected and beloved by him, besides two of them were neere allyed unto him in blood, and might have ben suspected for theyr to muche love unto him, espetially they havyng ben so frequent and ordinary wth him in all his former trobles, as also at the instant before this fell out; the other 2, as it was generally beleived, were esteemed to bee partially inclyned in affection and love towardes him, in regarde of the opposition of his enemyes; and therfor as well in nature as honor hee could not admit or condiscent that they should have indured wronge for his sake; also consideringe that they came thither in peaceable manner, as messingers or mediators to intreate his

his desistinge from any violente course to bee intended ; but, admit it had com unto that, they must have offred theyr petition unto her Ma^{ty} for theyr owne saftyes, for the obtayninge of her grace and mercy to my Lord and the rest for what had past. Doth any mā thinke that her M^{ty} would not or did not more respect her own honor, saftey, and the publicke peace of her kingdom (all the w^{ch} seemed at that time to bee in question), then theyr Lor^{pps}? Allthough hee would have ben trobled and perplexed no doubt for them, notwthstandinge it had not ben fit, nor safe, to have spent much time in parlying about theyr freedoms, not knowinge what practises or partes were a foote, espetially seeinge diverse of her nobility ingaged, and others both of great estate and many freindes, and what roote it had taken, or into what head it was growne, could not suddenly be knowne, and therfor to prevente the greater mischeffe the lesser was to bee chosen.

Wheras it may bee objected, the Prince in her honor would never have suffred the Lordes to perish ; termes of honor in case of extremity Princes ar least ceremoniouse to observe, espetially when they remember, in all humayne actions ther is nothinge w^{ch} wth lesse perill they may not temporize and except then rebellion, in the oppression wherof ther is no greater vertue then expedicōn, for that by how muche it is suffred by so much it riseth into degrees of worse, as a foare that is lingered growes in the ende a cure doubtfull ; and therfor knowinge that wise providence is truely more hono^{le} then fonde ceremonyes can possibly bee profitabile, in as muche as the on giveth security wth contente, the other threatningt daunger wth shame, they shold not have givē

givē any impedimente to her expedition, consideringe farther, that it is better to p̄vente a mischiffe in time then to repent in idle complemente to late.

Besides, what knew her Ma^{ty}, upon a sudden and consideringe the probabilityes aforesayde, but that they might have ben linked in councell and confederacy wth the rest, or at least have willingly stayed there to bee a meanes, if the worse had not hapned, to have by theyr solicitaōn drawne her Ma^{ty} to the pardoninge of his offence for the redeeminge of theyr lives; and why shoulde shee not bee doubtfull or suspicioouse of this, hearinge how many did applaude if not joyne themselves in the enterprise? Last of all, if these arguments be not sufficiente in the concaytes of any not acquaynted wth the polefyes and resoluōns of princes, let inquiry be made of the Lordes themselves, who had reason to know as much as others and to hope for the best, and I assure my selfe that they will answer that they verely do beleeve that they must have dyed wth the rest, before the prince would have yealded to more then was afterwardes assented unto. And, out of this theyr assurance, they have thought themselves both in honor and nature bounde to requite mee wth any thinge that either was or is in theyr powres, to the savinge of my life. But, if since they have founde that so difficult a matter, wth keepinge my blood from beinge taynted, how unable had they ben to have pacifyed the princes indignaōn agaynst my Lorde and the rest? and it is playne that nether the respect of theyr authorityes, nor the greatnes of theyr favors, can continew unto mee either my places, or procure from her Ma^{ty} any kinde of meanes, so much as to defray the charge of my imprisonmente,

mente, much leſſe to mayntayne my estate or reputaſon, ſo small is my gettinge by the on, and ſo great is my miſery by the other; wherby it is maniſt I did nothinge as a falſe affeſted freinde, but do heereby approve my meeninge to my Lorde of Effex was not evell in my delivery of the Lords, nor was it don wthout diſcretiōn or understandinge, as well as leave and direcſion, as alſo hope of ſom good therby to have enſued to his Lor^{pp}; nor if they had remayned could they have ben profitabke unto him, as by thiſ that hath ben fayde may playnely appeare, therfor if it did not yealde that ſucceſſe that was defyred ther was no faulte in my endeavours.

CAP. V.

The cauſe of my confeſſion, and the ſomme therof no more than my Lorde himſelfe might haue acknowledg'd wthout the impayrингe of hiſ cauſe.

NOW, as concerninge my confeſſion, the w^{ch} is the next thinge to bee ſpoken of, ether why it was ſo much or any thinge at all? I ſhall defyre you to conſider thiſe 3 thiſes; firſt, iſ I had refuſed to haue ſayd any thiſe, it might haue ben beleev'd that I had ben mereley obſtinate; ſecondly, in ſeeminge to make a free and playne confeſſion, it was the better to bee credetted that I dealt ſincereley and truely; laſtely, makinge relaſon of thiſes that might ſeeme of moment to mee, beinge in themſelves wayed and conſidered by theyr judgments that were to haue them in handlinge, I knew they would appear of no valewe or importe,

as

as by the examinacon of the particulars may appeare, as also the sequell and tryall, for hee was not condemned upon any thinge in my confession but for that of Drury-house, wherof I was not the first author (as by this it doth or may most playnly appeare,) but was only to acknowledge that the w^{ch} was then alreddy by other men confesfed, and if I had denied it might have ben a just occasion for my freindes to have left mee, whose favors I healde, in hope that I of all others would deale playnely and truely in delivery of my knowledge; and therfore to make it appear I was nether obstinate, nor accquaynted wth any former matter, I seemed so freely to acknowledge those public actions of his the w^{ch} in all reason I knew could not bee concealed, but that of Drury howse I was unwillinge to call into my memory, till I sawe so good tokens that it was discovered by others, as I founde it; if I had denied it, ther had ben no way wth mee but deathe, wherfor, beinge demanded concerninge that matter, I answered what had ben formerly discovered, never accknowledginge other then that it was a private enterprise intended only against certayne particular persons, and no other ende did I know it, had I pronounced to the eternall God, for that w^{ch} others have confest of themselves and theyr purposes, to bee otherwise then it did beare shewe of, and that themselves had publickly protested, I am no ways guilty of, for all mens oathes and protestacons to mee was of theyr love and allegiance to her Ma^{ty}, and that while I did not knowe but that it had ben lawful for mee to joyne my selfe wth them, som of the w^{ch} number I so dearly loved as ther was nothinge save the daunger of my soule that I would have refused to have don or adventured for theyr sakes, as

in the sequell heeroft it hath appeared. And the reason why I accknowlede I had means to have taken or killed S^r Walter Rawlegh, was the better to make it appeare that ther was nether malitiouse or boucherouse course intended to him or any, and also to give him cause to acknowledge himselfe in that respecte behouldinge unto mee, whereby to take from him occāion to exercize his powre, w^{ch} I knewe to be great at that instante, to my ruine, for I did beleeve hee could not in reason bee so voyde of humane respect as not to requite on courtesy wth an other, as also it was no matter of treason against her Ma^ty, but rather manifestaçon of the contrary, approvinge this intente to bee particular agaynst S^r Walf Rawly and others.

CAP. VI.

The cause of my cominge to avow my confession, the choyce beinge not in mee, and my Lord his speeches unto mee rather out of his misconceite then any just cause given him of mee.

I F it bee demaunded why I did com furthe and avowe any thinge agaynst him, I must answere, the choyce was no more in mee then in my Lord to have refused to have com to his arraynemente, nor so much neither, for hee could but dye, the w^{ch} he was assured of, and I might have som hope of life if I seemed not wilfull or obstinate. But hee denyinge somthinge that I had confessed, and I beinge at hande so neare as the Gate Howse to the Hall of Westminster, it was thought fit I should bee sent for, to approve it, although the matter it selfe w^{ch} hee did denye was nothinge; for when I
came

came, hee demaunded whether, yea or noe, I advised him from the attempte of y^e Courte? wherunto when I answered I did, I desyred to have it testifyed by my Lorde of Southampton, then also at the barre. But in truthe what was either my perwasion or dissuasion to prove that hee did urge any fuche thinge? Or, put the case it was a question propounded by him to his friendes, as so it was, where every on was to speake his opinion, and I differinge from others, might thinke it no enterprise for my Lorde to undertake, and therupon might ether dislike or dissuade it, and afterwardes, beinge in question for the same, might deliver in favor of my selfe what my advise was then. This, I say, was nothing to my Lorde of any such momente, in regarde of ether what was don by him or confessed by others, that hee needed to have desyred mee to have ben brought before him.

Agayne, let it bee imagined, that, in private conference betweene my Lorde and mee, I did speake som wordes that might shew a possibility for him to accomplish his desyre if hee would attempte the Courte, upon w^{ch} privat conference, callinge it to minde, might thinke I could not confess I had dissuaded him from it, and therfor might conceave it to bee a matter imagined agaynst him rather then truly delivered by mee. As also my confession being the first and only evidence as then was read unto him, although the laste receaved. But why should I be more excepted agaynst for my cominge thither, beinge brought out of cloase prison, then those that were both neerer unto him in blood and of Ho^{le} authority, that came to justify agaynst him more then I did? w^{ch} as it was not in theyr choyse as then to do otherwise, much lesse

was

was it in mine, and therfor me thinkes it is an unreasonablie thinge for any to expect an answer of mee, for my doinge as I did in that behalfe, much lesse do I deserve to bee condemned by it. By this y^u see I could nether do lesse then was done, nor willingly did what I did, that might give cause of dislike or pjudice unto my Lo., wherfor I doubt not, but, the pmisses considered, I cannot receave just blame for cominge in place, beinge brought thither by publick authority; and while I was there I did not aggravate any thinge agaynst him, but ether answered in my owne excuse, or to the question hee propounded, shewinge to the worlde, w^{ch} I could not conceale, both my greefe and shame to bee so unfortunatly miserable, that must bee brought in publick to condemne my selfe and accuse my freinde.

Wheras it may bee objected — Q. What sayd my Lord unto him at the Barre? To the w^{ch} I answer, it were a harde taxe layde upon mee to require of mee a reasoun of every misconcayte or error my Lo. committed; but, bycause this concerne the my selfe, I am the willinger to accknowlede that hee had in som forte just cause for his sayinge and doinge as hee did. First, for that ther had, as then, no other evydence ben read unto him, nor, happily, did hee thinke that any man else had confessed ought, wherfor resolvinge wth himselfe to denye the whole, hee was of opinion that the next way was to disgrace the credit of the reporter, and to lay upon him any imputacion hee coulde, therby to disprove the likelyhood of the truthe therof. Secondly, for that hee might bee of opinion, or at leaste it mighte so feeme unto him, that I had com thither voluntarilie, and that I had my life given mee to justify any thinge agaynst him, out of w^{ch} misconceate

misconceate hee might enter into a rage and mallice towardes mee, and therfor out of the bitternes of his spirit hee might speake as hee did, althoughe, of the twoe, I had most cause to bee offended wth him, that had for his sake both undon my selfe and mine, and in his quarrell lost all that I had, and my life, at that time, for oft I knewe, as farfoorthe in question as his.

CAP. VII.

The Councell and resolucion of my Lo. of Essex the Sattarday night before hee went into the citty, and the reasons that perswaded his freindes to give theyr assentes therto.

HER Ma^{ty} receaved dayly advertisemente of the course of people and greate resorte of Lordes and others to Essex howse, contrary (as it seemed) to her Highnes admonitions to him at the time hee was made keeper unto himselfe, and doubting wthall what the issue therof might bee, the rather in regarde of the eminent causes of suspition that were made apparente, considerenge the discontented natures and dispositions of diverse of those that were most frequent and ordinarily noted to be neerefest him, both in councell and affection; and therfor to prevente any inconvenience that might by such a toleration insue, it was determined by her Ma^{ty} that hee should bee sent for before the Lordes of the Councell, whome shee required to admonish him of the manner of his livinge, and to coīmaunde him to drawe him selfe to a more retyred fashion, or otherwise shee should bee forced to take another course wth him.

Upon

Upon this resolucon Secretary Harberte³⁸⁰ was sent to Effex Howfe to require the Earle to com before the Lordes of her Ma^{ties} Councell, then at Salisburie courte,³⁸¹ who havinge delivered his message, receaved for answer from the Earle, that he desired to be excused for that time, in as much as hee was not well at ease, but the truthe was indeede that hee presentlye apprehended a doubte leaste somthinge had ben discovered of what hee had formerly practised, and this suspition was the rather confirmed in him by reason that so hee had ben informed of som of his freindes, who advertised him of as muche, to the ende to hasten him forwarde to the execution of what hee had deeplye ingaged both himselfe and them, and therfor imagininge himselfe and his freindes better able to answere what they had don by armes then by lawe, he resolved ether to approve his purpose good or to dye in the defence therof.

But, upon this sudden mutacon and chaunge of resolucon, all his former councells and purposes were altered, for nowe hee had made himselfe a defendante that before was resolved to bee an assaylante; such is y^e successe of those whose desyre is greater then theyr courage, or whose wordes ar not secondeed in so desperate a case wth deedes. His freindes upon this beinge assembled, hee accquainted them what had past,

³⁸⁰ Sir John Herbert was a devoted follower of Cecil, and had been long in his service. He was ambassador to the Danish Court in 1563, and one of the commissioners sent in 1597 by the Queen, to perform the delicate task of dissuading Henry IV. of France from negotiating

a peace with Spain. He was created second Secretary of State on May 10th, 1600.

³⁸¹ Here was formerly the residence of the Earls of Dorset. Dorset Street and numerous buildings now occupy the ancient site of Salisbury Court.

past, and to make his conceaved opinion the more undoubted, hee declared the manner howe hee was assignd to com unto the Lordes, the w^{ch} was privat and by water, makinge no doubte if hee had so gon hee should have prestly ben sent to the Tower; and, the better to confirme this in the concayte of the rest, hee declared farther, that hee was advertised that ther were warrantes signed for the apprehendinge of diverse others, wherupon every man beginninge to distrust the worste, and to thinke how to pvent as much as lay in theyr powers, it was pfsently disputable, whether it were best to attempte the courte or to move the city or to go else where, but the opinion that all was discovred gave reason that the courte was provided sufficently for defence, espetially ther beinge in our powers no meanes wherwthall to make pfsent attempte upon it; upon the w^{ch} consideracion and reasons that designe was given over; then it was demaunded what reason my Lo. had to be assured the citizens would take armes in his behalfe, wherupon after many likelyhoods given, ther was no doubte of that to be made, then ther was no man but pfsently gave way to that opinion of attemptinge the puttinge them in armes, by whose helpe it had ben in his power to have don any thinge. The while this was in dispute ther came on to the dore, to whome my Lord himselfe wente, and as hee reported, hee was a messenger that came unto him from som of his freindes in the city, who had sente to let his Lor^{pp} know that ther had ben a brute of som harde measure intended agaynst him, and therfor desyred his Lor^{pp} to acquaynt them wth the truthe therof, and wthall to send to them his pleasure what they shoulde doe, for that they were
reddy

112 *Breefe Answer to Objections made*

reddy and most desyrous to hazard themselves in any thinge to defend him agaynst the malice of his private enemyes. To this hee returned them many thankes, and wthall sent them worde what had past, promisinge that they shoulde heare more from him that night or the next morninge, willinge wthall that they should stand upon theyr guarde, for so would hee, and if they heard hee was assaulted they to com unto his reskewe; if they were, then hee and his freindes would com unto them. This direct mesflage was the thinge that made all doubt of the citizens' forwardnes to joyne wth my Lorde to bee out of question; wherupon it was resolved, the next morninge to put in execution the resolution of goinge into the citty, such an extremity by his delayes from time to time had hee runne himselfe into, as now his laste hopes were absolutely to depende uppon the giddy multitude, from the w^{ch} daunger nether coulde the importunity of his freindes perswade him, nor his owne knowledge of the doubtfull estate wherin hee stooode make him any thinge the forwarder to the executinge of that hee had begunne. For still, when it came to the issue of actinge, so many difficultyes did appearre as were sufficient to deferre it from day to day, or rather, as I suppose, it being wthhelde by a certayne fatall timerousnes, hee did let passe alwayes the opportunity, in so much as so it hapneth for the most parte, when the execution of great enterpryses bee deferred, his purpose began to bee suspested. For her Ma^v sendinge for him to com before her Lordes was the occasion to approve that a guilty conscience is a thousandd witnessses, for it was his refusall to go unto them that discovered the certaynty of his purpose to attempte somthinge, althoough they could not conjecture what

what it was he intended, till the very instante of his goinge into the city, as since it did manifestly appeare; so far was that from knowledge the w^{ch} had 4 monethes before ben disputed on, and so neere was hee to the toppe of his desyre, if folly and fortune had not hindred it. But by what I have since hearde I am of opinion that som of his owne freindes, observinge his couldnes, did cause this fayned message to bee sente unto him, therby to sharpen his disposition, as also to take all occāōn of doubtē from others whome hee founde very unwillinge to hazarde any thinge upon the people's unstble humors; and in bothe these his purposēs hee was nothinge deceaved, had that ben all to have ben thought upon. Notwthstandinge ther was not so much credit given unto the people, but that the conclusion and last determinaōn was, that the next morninge, both my Lo. and the rest of the noble men and gentlemen should go on horsback into the Citty, and then if they had founde them backwarde on whome hee depended, so as hee might have reason to despaire in theyr aydes, they and hee together, beinge to the number of 200 horse, to have prefently departed towardes any other parte or partes of the kingdom hee had pleased. But if y^u desire to know of mee how it came to passe that hee neglected this councell and went afterwardes on foote, I can say no more to satisfy you, but that such a passion is sudden feare as it maketh a man to runne, not whether councell directeth him, but whether theyr fortunes will leade them, not suffering them to consider of the perill, but makes them often times to refuse the safest meanes, and to negle&t the thinges w^{ch} should do theyr security; yet when I demaunded of him how chance hee would go before his horses came, hee answēred,

114 *Breefe Answer to Objections made*

fwered, that hee would not stay for them; but I suspected hee forgat to give directions for them over nighte, as hee undertooke to doe. This I hope will bee sufficient to satisfy those of wifdom and understandinge that the councell and advise hee receaved from his freindes wrought not his ruine and downefall, but rather his not followinge it; neither yet do I see how it can bee in reason so confidently beleeved that hee was betrayed by those hee reposed a trust in, except in this message promisinge ayde when ther was no suche thinge intended; wherfor I, as I expect salvation, am no wayes guilty, but did verely beleeve it to bee an undoubted truthe, or otherwise I could never have ben drawne to confente to have depended upon them, although it may bee I shold not have refused to runne the fortune of the rest as I did, but more unhappy than any other, that am condemned to be false in my affection and treacherously to have betrayed my friendes; but the unlikelyhood therof by this that I have sayde, I doubt not but doth playnely appeare to all indifferent mindes or founde judgementes.

I have declared unto you the truthe, and delivered y^u the reasons as neere as I can, of all that passed, wherby I assure my selfe y^u will rest fully satisfyed of my honest meaninge and true love to my Lorde, howsoever it is otherwise understoode; and I do not a little mervayle what it should bee that hath ben the occasion so subdenly to settle and establishe this so false and so loathsom a conjecture of mee. I thinke they that have knowne mee can witnesse (howsoever I must confesse I have offended the Almighty God, and do deserve for my finnes agaynst his divine Ma^{ty} greater punishments then hetherunto I have endured,) yet I have not delighted
my

my selfe in any loathsom or dishonest humor, nor so lived in the place where I have had coūaunde that I can bee justly accused to have spente my time ever as a gluttonouse drunkeerde, a riotouse person, or that I could ever subject my nature to accept of bribes, or consentē to extortions or unlawfull actions, nor did I ever seeme to be negligent or careles of the truste reposēd in mee. If any of these thinges (I say) could have ben objected or justly approved agaynst mee, havinge so many and so great enemyes as it is knowne I have awayes had, ther is no doubte but I should have hearde of it longe agoe. As for my faythfull and unfayned love unto my Lorde of Effex, what better demonstracōns or assurances can be giuen by any, or who is hee that in effecte did more to approve and assure the same then I have don, it being wth every circumstance wisely considered and truely knowne? For what is ther more to bee looked for of a freinde then to loose all the worlde doth esteeme deereste for his love sake? And so much have I not refused to make apparette. In a word, I protest no man doth live that did more honestly and faythfully love him then I did, nor none did adventure or advise more to have saved his life then myselfe, if it had taken effecte, nether was it don ether in respecte of rewarde or benefit I ever had by him, for estate it is well knowne it was never in his power to make mee; those places and authorityes I had were merely given mee by her Ma^{ty}, much against his likinge, for at that time hee was an earnest suitor for S^r Cary Raynoldes³⁸² to have had the forte of Plymouthe,

³⁸² Carew Reynell, born in 1563, was of 1597. and like him was left behind at an associate of Gorges in the expedition Plymouth, on account of illnes, as we learn

mouthe, and his graces of honor were bestowed on mee, as bothe before and since hee had don on diverse others nether better deservinge nor worthyer descended then myselfe ; and yet, bycause y^u shall knowe I did not love him out of a childish affection, or a base disposition to serve my owne turne by his fortunes, I will in a worde give y^u a faythfull and true accounte for doinge as I did in that behalfe. First, I noted him to bee in the opinion of her Ma^{ty} of greatest esteeme, and best worthy of any subje^ct. At that time houldinge myselfe bounde to reverence her affections and applaude her choyce, I was willinge to make shewe therof by the approba^con of the use of my service to bee at his disposition and commande ; and yet I must confesse I did not this absolutely before I founde in him a willingenes and desyre to imbrace it, not yet nether untill both by my freindes and my selfe I had made observation of his worthe and vertue, the w^{ch} inwardly I perswaded myselfe had ben rooted in him, that outwardly made him so bewtifull, and so adorned in the opinion and the eyes of the worlde as hee was, for, I pray you, who was ther that seemed more industrious and carefull to norish vertue in all men then hee ? Whether hee was divine or souldier, a wise coⁿmonwealthes man, or a good lawyer, to all these he indeavoured to be an excellent benefactor, and a faythfull protector. And who was ther that seemed

learn from a letter of Sir William Brown to Sir Robert Sydney in the *Sydney Papers*, where his name is spelled Cary Renolds. He was one of the courtiers of the virgin queen, and her cupbearer. He received the honor of knighthood

from Essex at Dublin, July 12th, 1599. He was made governor of Duncannon Castle, and, upon the accession of James, became usher of the privy chamber. He died September 7th, 1624.

seemed more willingly to expose himselfe to all hazardes and travayle for his princes or contryes service then hee? Who ever more willingly spente his own estate, and all that by any means hee coulde get, for the publick good of his contry? The dayly experience I had therof, and the undoubted opinion of his good meaninge therin, was the cause that bounde mee so inseperably to him. But if y^u say that in this hee aymed at an other ende then the love of vertue only; if so hee did hee hathe carryed his rewarde wth him; for my parte, in all my knowledge of him and private conference wth him, I can nether affirme nor lay any suche thinge to his charge. Thus y^u see I nether childishly nor basely exposed of my love to my Lorde at the first, and I have helde for an invincible maxime, that ther is no polefy to true honesty, nor love but where true vertue is, and therfor it is very unlike I should go so much agaynst my owne principall as to consent to betray my freinde, espetially for those partys who had never given mee a cause of love to do any such thinge for them, nor by reason of theyr place could I expe&t the like assurance as from himselfe I had, for wee finde by comon experience, as well as the old proverbe, that like will to like, and every man will keepe company wth such as he is himselfe; hee was of the same profession that I was, and of a free and noble spirit. But I must say no more, for hee is gon, and I am heere; I loved him alive, and cannot hate him being dead; hee had som imperfections — so have all men; hee had many vertues — so have fewe; and for those his vertues I loved him; and when time, w^{ch} is the tryall of all truthes, hath runne his course,

course, it shall appeare that I am wronged in the opinion of this idle age. In the meane time, I þfume this that I have sayde is sufficiente to satisfy the wife and discreete; for the rest, whatever I can do is but labor lost, and therfor I purpose not to troble you nor myselfe at this time any farther.





THE DECLARATION OF S^R. FERDI- NANDO GORGES

8 FEBR 160¹



NE tuesday as I remember before the Insurrec-
tion I was sent unto by my Lord of Essex
praying me to meet my Lord of Southampton
S^r Charles Danvers S^r Iohn Davis & others
his Friends at Drury House where I should see
a schedule of his Friends names & his projectes to be dis-
puted upon: Whither I came accordingly & found the
forsayth Earl S^r Charles Danvers S^r Iohn Davis & one M^r
Lyttelton The names were shew'd & numbered to be six
score Earls, Barons, Knights & Gentlemen Their Projects
were these whether to attempt the Court or the Town, or to
Stir his friends in London first or whether both the Court &
Town at a instant? The most resolved both the Court & Town
were to be attempted first. For mine own part I disliked
that counsell my resones ware (that I alledged to them) first
to attempt both with those numbers, was not to be thought
on, because they were not sufficient and therefore advised
them

them to think of something else. Then they would needes reslove to attempt the Court with all desired my opinion. But I prayed them first to set down the matter how they thought it might be done. Then S^t John Davis took ink & paper and began to assign to divers principal Men there several places some to keep the Gate, some to be in the Hall some to be in the Prefence, some in the Lobby some in the Guard Chamber, others to come in with my Lord himself, who should have had the paſſage given him into the Privy Chamber, where he was to have presented himself to her Mayes^y.—

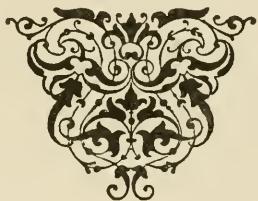
Having then proceeded thus far I was asked what I thought of it? my answer was I utterly disliked that course: for besides the horrour of it wherewith I found myself aflykted I saw an impossibility for those means to accomplish it

The means they did further urge to be sufficient, for as they seemed to affuse themselves the grettist refistanse that was likely to be made, was by the Guard, and of many of them there was no doubt to be had for they had been my Lord's fervants. Notwithstanding I would not condescend to that corſe Whereupon my Lord of Southampton in a kind of paſſion demanded this, Shall we reslove upon nothing then? It is three months or more ſince we firſt undertooke this. My Reply was. It was more than I knew, I was demanded what I would then advise that my Lord ſhould do. If there be a neceſſity I answered, he muſt do ſomethinge. Let him ſtir his friends in the City of whom you ſay he is well aſhoured of, This was ſo well liked of as we broke up & refolved of nothinge but referred all to my Lord of Effex himſelf.

After

After this I netheur saw my Lord nor heard any thing from him to any purpose until Saturday night when he resolved the next day to put in practise the moving of his Friends in the City upon the occasion aforesaid. And of my opinion was M^r Lyttleton

FERD: GORGES.





CHARTER OF THE PROVINCE OF MAINE,

GRANTED TO SIR FERDINANDO GORGES

APRIL 3, 1639.



CHARLES by the Grace of God King of England Scotland France & Ireland, Defender of the Faith &c.³⁸³

To all to whom these Presents shall come
Greeting;

Whereas Sir Ferdinando Gorges Knight hath been an humble Suiter unto us to grant & confirm unto him & his

³⁸³ Previous to the date of this Charter, Sir Ferdinando Gorges received from the Council for New England, of which he was a member, the following grants of territory:

1. *August 10th, 1622*: to himself and Captain John Mason jointly, territory lying upon the seacoast between the Merrimac and Kennebec rivers; extending sixty miles inland; with all the islands within five leagues of the premises, to be called the PROVINCE OF MAINE.

2. *November 17th, 1629*: to himself and Captain John Mason jointly, territory north westerly of the foregoing, in the region of Lake Champlain, denominated Laconia; the bounds of which are imperfectly defined.

3. *November 3d, 1631*: to himself, Captain John Mason and others, territory on both sides the Piscataqua River, called the Piscataqua grant. The several patents describing the property conveyed by them may be found printed in full in *Captain John Mason*, edited by

his Heirs a part & portion of the Country of America now commonly called or known by the Name of New England in America, hereafter in these Presents described by the Metes & Bounds thereof, with diverse & sundry Priviledges & Jurisdictions for the Welfare & Good of the State of those Colonies that shall be drawn thither, & for the better Governm^t of the People that shall live & inhabit within the Limits & Precincts thereof, which part or portion of the said Country, we have heretofore amongst other things for us Our Heirs & Successors taken into our actual and real possession, or in default of such actual & real possession formerly taken, We do by these presents for us Our Heirs & Successors take the same into Our actual & real possession. Know ye therefore that of Our special Grace, certain Knowledge & mere motion, we have given, granted & confirmed: and by these presents for Us, Our Heirs & Successors do give grant & confirm unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & assigns, all that Part, Purpart, & Portion of the Main Land of New England aforesaid beginning at the Entrance of Piscataqua Harbour, & so to pass up the same into the River of Newichewannock,³³⁴ & through the same unto the furthest Head thereof, & from thence Northwestward

by John Ward Dean, A.M., Prince Society, Boston, 1887, pp. 177-183, 189-197, 198-204.

Of this Charter of 1639, there are several copies; one in the Office of the Public Records in London; one in the Massachusetts Archives, and one in the York Records. The latter has been printed in the Historical Collections of Ebenezer Hazard, Vol. I. pp. 442-455, and by comparison with the copy

here printed, will be found to be very imperfect. The reason why the spelling of the York copy differs so much from this may be accounted for by supposing that the original charter, or a copy of it, was read to the scribe, who copied it upon the records and spelt the words in his own way.

³³⁴ Now the Salmon Falls River, which still bounds Maine on the west.

westward untill One hundred & twenty Miles be finished, and from Piscataqua Harbour Mouth aforesaid North-Eastward along the Sea Coast to Sagadahoc, & up the River thereof to Kynybequy River, & thro' the same unto the head thereof, & unto the Land Northwestward untill One hundred & twenty Miles be ended, being accounted from the Mouth of Sagadahoc, & from the period of One hundred & twenty Miles afores^d to croſs over Land to the One hundred & twenty Miles End formerly reckoned up, into the Land from Piscataqua Harbour thro' Newichawannock River; And also the North half of the Isles of Shoales, together with the Isles of Capawock & Nautican near Cape Cod, as also all the Islands & Iſletts lying within five Leagues of the Main all along the aforesaid Coasts between the afores^d Rivers of Piscataqua & Sagadahoc, with all the Creeks, Havens & Harbours thereunto belonging, & the Reversion & Reversions, Remainder & Remainders of all & singular the f^d Lands Rivers & premises, all which f^d part Purpart or portion of the said Main Land, & all & every the Premifes herein before named, We do for us Our Heirs & Successors create & incorporate into one Province or County, And we do name, ordain & appoint that the portion of the Main Land & Premises aforesaid shall forever hereafter be called & named the Province or County of Maine & not by any other Name or Names whatsoever, with all & singular the Soil and Grounds thereof as well dry as covered with Water, & all Waters, Ports, Havens & Creeks of the Sea & Inlets of the said Province of Maine & premises, or to them or any of them belonging or adjacent, As also all Woods, Trees, Lakes, & Rivers within the said Province of Maine & premises,

ises, & the Limits of the same, together with the fishing, of whatsoever kind, as well pearls as Fish as Whales Sturgeons, or any other either in the Sea or Rivers, And also all Royalties of Hawking, hunting Fowling Warren & chaces within the said province of Maine & premises aforesaid, Deer of all Sorts, & all other Beasts & Fowles of Warren & Chase, & all other Beasts there, And also all Mines & Oar of Gold Silver, Precious Stones, Tin, Lead, Copper, Sulphur Brimstone, or any other Metal or Mineral matter whatsoever within the said Province or premises or any of them opened or hidden, & all Quarries there, & all Gold Silver, Pearls, Precious Stones & Ambergrease⁸⁸⁵ which shall be found within the 1st province & premises or any of them & the Limits & Coasts of the same or any of them, or any part of them or any of them, & all & singular other profitts, Benefits & Commodities growing, coming accruing or happening, or to be had received or taken within the said province & premises Limitts & Coasts of the same or any of them, And also all Patronages & Advowsons, free dispositions & Donations of all & every such Churches & Chapels as shall be made & created within the said province or Premises or any of them, with full power, licence & Authority to build & erect

⁸⁸⁵ Ambergis, which is a substance of waxy consistence, sometimes found floating in large masses on the sea, and the result of disease in the sperm whale, was of great value, being especially used in perfumery. It is recorded that in the autumn of 1613, a vessel brought to England a piece of ambergris, "as big as the body of a giant, the head and arms are wanting, but so foolishly handled that it brake in pieces. The largest piece

brought home was not over 68 ounces, which sells for 12 or 15 shillings an ounce more than smaller pieces;" and it is further recorded, that "on the 28th of July, 1614, the Virginia sold to the East India Company two boxes of ambergris at 3*l.* 1*s.* and 3*l.* 2*s.* per ounce." *Vide History of the Virginia Company of London*, by Edward D. Neill, Albany, N. Y., 1869, p. 55.

erect or cause to be built & erected so many Churches & Chapels there, as to the faid Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns shall seem meet & convenient, & to dedicate and consecrate the same, or cause the same to be dedicated & consecrated according to the Ecclesiastical Laws of this our Realm of England, together also with all & singular & as large & ample Right, Jurisdictions priviledges, Prerogatives, Royalties, Liberties, Immunities, Franchises, Preheminences & Hereditaments as well by Sea as by Land ✓ within the f^d province & premises, & the precinct & Coasts of the same or any of them, & within the Seas belonging or adjacent to them or any of them, as the Bishop of Durham, within the Bishoprick or County Palatine of Durham in our Kingdom of England now hath, useth or injoyeth or of Right he ought to have, use, and enjoy within the said County Palatine, as if the same were herein particularly mentioned & expressed, to have & to hold, posses & enjoy the said province & premises & every of them & all & singular other the premises before by these presents granted or mentioned or intended to be granted, with their & every of their rights, members & appurtenances unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns to the sole & only use of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns for ever, To be holden of Us Our Heirs & Successors as of the Mannor of East Greenwich in the County of Kent by fealty only in free and common Soccage,³⁸⁶ & not in Capite

nor

³⁸⁶ Lands were held by various tenures, and before the reign of James I., largely by the sword, or by military service to be rendered to the King; but tenures at this time in socage, or by the plough, became common; “the antient

service reserved on this Tenure being to plough the lord’s land.” This ancient service was at this time obsolete, and the term “socage” had come to stand for “conventional services, not military.”

nor in Knights Service for all manner of Services whatsoever, yeilding & paying therefor yearly to us Our Heirs & Successors One Quarter of Wheat, & also yeilding & paying unto Us Our Heirs & Successors the fifth Part of the clear yearly Profitt of all Royal Mines of Gold & Silver that from time to time & at all times hereafter shall be there gotten & obtained (if any shall be there found) & the fifth part of all Gold & Silver found upon the Sea, shoar or in Rivers or elsewhere within the bounds & Limits of the said province & premises, & the fifth part of the clear yearly Proffit of Pearl Fishing; And We do for us Our Heirs & Successors further grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs and Assigns for ever all Treasure Trove, Goods & Chattels of Felons & of Felons of themſelves, Waifes, Eſtraies Pirates Goods, Deodands,³⁸⁷ Fines & Amerciaments

³⁸⁷ The law of deodands is curious enough to engage our attention. Coke informs us that "deodands as well as other forfeitures in general, wrecks, treasure-trove, &c., may be granted by the king to particular ſubjects as a royal franchise;" and he defines a deodand as being "whatever personal chattel is the immediate occasion of the death of any reasonable creature;" but "no deodand is due" where an infant, under the age of discretion, is killed by a fall *from* a cart or horse, or the like, not being in motion; when, if an adult person falls from thence, and is killed, the thing is certainly forfeited." A curious additional reaſon given in the case of the infant is that, "such infant being presumed incapable of actual fin," no deodand is needed "to purchase propitiating masses." This gives us the clew to the original use of deodands, or, as the name implies, *Gifts to God*. As it was considered necessary that masses

should be celebrated by the church for the fouls of thoſe accidentally killed, and requisite that the church ſhould receive pay for the ſervice, the law of deodands was contrived, not only as a relief to the relatives of the perfon killed, but to make the payment for masses fure by devot ing to forfeiture the very property connected with the accident. In Coke's time, the Roman Catholic church being under the ban of the English government, deodands could no longer be used for the purchase of masses; hence, like everything else which the reigning monarch could make available for the reward of favorites, deodands were seized upon by him for that purpose. The law applied differently to things in or not in motion. Thus, if a man was killed climbing the wheel of a cart not in motion, the wheel alone was forfeited; but if the wheel was in motion, everything connected with it, the cart, and even the contents of the cart, which

ciaments of all the Inhabitants & others happening growing or arising in the said province & other the premises or any part thereof, or in any voyage or passage to or from the same, as well for Offences committed against Ourself Our Heirs or Successors, or our proffit as against others, or things concerning others or the proffits of others, & all Manner of Wrecks of Ships or Merchandize, and all that which to Wreck belongeth, by what means foever happening within or upon the Havens, Coats, Creeks or Shoars of the premises or any Part thereof, And We do for us Our Heirs & Successors, create, ordain & constitute the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns the true & absolute Lords and Proprietors of all & every the aforesaid Province of Mayne & premises aforesaid, & all & every the Limits & Coasts thereof, Saving always the Faith & Allegiance of the Supream Dominion due to Us Our Heirs & Successors: And for the better Government of such our Subjects & others as at any time shall happen to dwell or reside within the f^d Province & Premises or pass to or from the same our Will & Pleasure is that the Religion now professed in the Church of England & Ecclesiastical Governm^t now used in the same shall be forever hereafter Professed, & with as much convenient Speed as may be settled & established in & throughout the said Province & premises & every of them, And We do for us our Heirs & Successors by these presents give & grant unto the f^d Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, Power & Authority with the Assent of the greater part

which added weight to it, were forfeited. it was capable of yielding to him a Sir Ferdinando then probably regarded considerable revenue.
his grant of deadands as valuable, since

part of the Freeholders of the said Province & premises for the time being (when there shall be any) who are to be called thereunto from time to time, when & as often as it shall be requisite, to make, ordain & publish Laws Ordinances & Constitutions reasonable & not repugnant or contrary but agreeable as near as conveniently may be to the Laws of England, for the publick Good of the said province & premises & of the Inhabitants thereof by imposing of Penalties Imprisonments or other Correction, or if the Offence shall require by taking away of Life or Member, The said Laws & Constitutions to extend as well to such as shall be passing unto or returning from the said Province or premises, as unto the Inhabitants or Residents of or within the same and the same to be put in Execution by the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns or by his or their Deputies Lieutenants, Judges Officers or Ministers in that behalf lawfully authorized, & the same Laws, Ordinances and Constitutions or any of them to alter, change revoke or make void, & to make new not repugnant nor contrary but agreeable as near as may be to the Laws of England as the f^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Affigns together with the Freeholders or the greater Part of them for the time being shall from time to time think fit & convenient; And we do further by these Presents for us our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns full power & authority, & that it shall and may be lawful to & for him the f^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns to erect Courts of Iustice, as well Ecclesiastical as Civil & Temporal whatsoever, & to appoint & constitute from time to time Judges, Iustices, Magistrates & Officers as well
of

of the said Court & Courts of Iustice as otherwise, as well by Sea as by Land, for the hearing & determining of all manner of causes whatsoever within or concerning the said Province & premises or any of them, or the Jnhabitants and Residents there, & Passengers to or from the same as well by Land as by Sea, and to order & appoint what matters or things shall be heard determined done or ordered in any of the said Courts, or by any of the said Judges Magistrates & Officers with such power & in such Form as it shall seem good to the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, And the said Judges Iustices, Magistrates & Officers & every or any of them from time to time to displace & remove when the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns shall think fit, & to place others in their Room & Stead, & that the Inhabitants & Residents within the s^d province & premises & passengers to & from the same may within forty days after Sentence given in the said Courts where Appeals in like Courts within this Kingdom are admitted appeal to the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, or his or their Gen^{ll} Governor or cheif Deputy of the said province and Premises for the time being, To whom we do by these presents for us our Heirs & Successors give full power & Authority to proceed in such Appeals, as in like Cases of Appeals within this Our Realm of England.

And We do further for us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns full power & Authority to pardon remit & release all Offences & Offenders within the said Province & premises ag^t all, every or any of the said Laws Ordinances or Constitutions, & to do all & singular other things unto the

Execution

132 *Charter of the Province of Maine,*

Execution of Justice appertaining in any Courts of Justice, according to the Form & Manner of Proceedings in such Courts to be used, altho' in these Our Letters patent there be no particular mention of the same; But we do nevertheless hereby signify & declare our Will & pleasure to be that the powers & authority hereby given to the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns for & concerning the Governm^t both Ecclesiastical & Civil within the f^d province & premises shall be subordinate & subject to the power & Reglem^t of the Lords & others Commiff^{rs} here for forreign Plantations for the time being, but for all & whatsoever doth, shall or may concern the propriety of the f^d Province, parts & Coasts of the same or any of them, or any Ownership or Interest in any Lands, Tenements or other Hereditaments, Goods or Chattels, or the nominating or appointing of any Officer or Officers, the same is left wholly to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns according to the Tenour, Intent & true Meaning of these presents; And because such Assemblies of Freeholders for making of Laws can not always be so suddenly called as there may be occasion to require the same, We do therefore for us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns full power & Authority that he the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns by him & themselves, or by his or their Deputies, Magistrates or Officers in that behalf lawfully constituted shall or may from time to time make & ordain fit & wholesome Ordinances within the said Province or premises aforesaid to be kept & observed as well for the keeping of the Peace as for the better Governm^t of the people there abiding

ing or passing to or from the same & to publish the same to all to whom it may appertain or concern, which Ordinances we do for us Our Heirs & Successors staightly command to be inviolably obserued within the f^d province and premies under the Penalty therein expreſſed, ſo as the same Ordinances be reasonable & not repugnant or contrary but as near as may be agreeable to the Laws & Statutes of Our Kingdom of England & ſo as the same Ordinances do not extend to the binding, charging or taking away of the Right or Jnterest of any Person or persons in their Lives, Members, Freeholds, Goods or Chattels whatſoever; And be-cause in a Country ſo far diſtant & ſeated amongſt ſo many barbarous Nations the Jntrufions or Invasions as well of the barbarous People as of pirates & other Enemies may be justly feared, we do therefore for us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the ſaid Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns full power & Authority y^t he the f^d Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns, as well by him & themſelves as by his and their Deputies Captains or other Officers for the time being ſhall or lawfully may muſter, levy, raiſe, arm & employ all perſon & perſons whatſoever inhabiting or reſiding within the ſaid province or premies for the reſiſting or withſtanding of ſuch Enemies or pirates both at Land & at Sea, & ſuch Enemies & Pirates if Occaſion ſhall require to pursue & proſecute out of the Limits of the ſaid Province or premies, & them if it ſhall ſo please God to vanquish, apprehend & take, & being taken, either according to the Law of Arms to kill or to keep & preſerve them at their pleaſures And likewiſe by force of Arms to recover from any Person or persons all ſuch Territories, Dominions Lands, places,

places, Goods, Chattels & Wares which hereafter shall be taken from the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns, or from his or their Deputies Officers or Servants, or from any the Planters, Jnhabitants or Residents of or within the said Province or premises, or from any other Members, Aiders or Assisters of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns, or from any other the Subjects of Us, Our Heirs & Successors, or others in Amity with us Our Heirs & Successors in the said province & premises & Coasts or any of them, or in their passage to or from the same: And We do further for Us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns in Case any Rebellion, sudden Tumult or Meeting shall happen to arise either upon the said Land within the f^d province & premises or any of them, or Coasts of the same, or upon the main Sea in passing thither or returning from thence, or in any such Expedition or Service as aforef^d, it shall or may be lawful to & for the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs and Assigns, as well by him & themselves, as by his & their Deputies, Captains or other Officers under his or their Seals in that behalf to be authorized, to whom we also for Us Our Heirs & Successors do give & grant full power and Authority to do & execute the same, to use & execute Martial Law ag^f such Rebels, Traytors Mutiners & Seditious persons in as ample Manner & Form as any Cap^t General in the Wars or as any Lieut^t or Lieutenants of any Country within this Our Realm of England by Virtue of his or their Office or place may or have been accustomed in time of War, Rebellion or Mutiny to do & perform; And we do for us Our Heirs & Successors

Successors further give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, & to all & every Commander, Gov^r Officer, Minister, Person & persons which shall by the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns be thereunto authorized or appointed Leave, License & power to erect raise & build from time to time in the province Territories & Coasts aforesaid, & every or any of them such & so many Forts, Fortresses, Platforms, Castles Cities, Towns & Villages & all Fortifications whatsoever, & the same & every of them to fortify & furnish with Men Ordinances, Powder, Shott, Armour, & all other Weapons, Munition & Habiliiments of War both for defence & Offence whatsoever, as to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns & every or any of them shall seem meet & convenient, & likewise to commit from time to time the Governm^t Custody & Defence thereof unto such person & persons as to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns shall seem meet, & to the said several Cities, Burroughs & Towns to grant Letters or Charters of Jncorporations with all the Liberties & things belonging to the same & in the said several Cities Burroughs & Towns to constitute such & so many Markets, Marts & Fairs & to grant such meet Tolls, Customes, Duties, priviledges and fredomes to or with the same, as by the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns shall be thought fit.

And for that the Plantations are subject to diverse Difficulties & Discommodities, therefore, We favouring the present beginning of the said plantation, & having a provident Care that those who are greived in one thing may be releived in another, do of our special Grace, certain Knowledge

edge & meer Motion, for us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said S^t Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns & unto all other our Subjects the Dwellers or Jnhabitants that shall at any time hereafter be the planters of or in the said province or any of the premises free Licence & Liberty for the landing, bringing in & unlading or otherwise disposing of all the Wares & Merchandizes, profitts, & Coñodities of the f^d province or any the premises both by Sea & by Land, either by themselves or their Servants, Factors or Assigns, in any of the Ports of us Our Heirs & Successors within Our Kingdoms of England & Ireland, paying only such Customs & Subsidies & Duties as our natural Subjects of this Our Realm of England shall or ought to pay & none other, & to have & enjoy all such Liberties, Freedoms & priviledges for or concerning the exporting of the same again, without paym^t of any more Customs or Duties, & for having again of Jmpost in such manner, & in the like beneficial Sort as any of our natural born Subjects of this Our Realm shall then have & enjoy, And We do also for Us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said S^t Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns full & absolute Power & authority to make erect & appoint within the f^d province & premises such & so many, ports, Havens, Creeks & other places for the Loading & unlading of Ships Barques & other Vessels, & in such & so many Places, & to appoint such Rights Iurisdictions, Priviledges & Liberties unto the said ports Havens & Creeks belonging, as to him or them shall seem meet, & that all & singular Ships Hoys, Barques & other Vessels to be laden & unladen in any way of Merchandize shall be laden or unladen at such ports

Havens

Havens & Creeks so by the said S^t Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Affigns to be made erected & appointed, & not elsewhere within the said province Premises & Coasts, & to appoint what reasonable Tolls shall be paid for the same, & the same Tolls to receive take & enjoy to the behoofe of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns to his & their own use, without Accompt to be therefor made to Us Our Heirs or Successors, any use, Custom, Matter or thing to the contrary thereof notwithstanding, Saving always to all Our Subjects of this Our Kingdom of England liberty of fishing as well in the Sea as in the Creeks of the said province & premises aforesaid, & the priviledge of Salting & drying of their Fish & drying of their Nets upon the Shoar of the said province & any the premises, any thing to the contrary thereof notwithstanding, which said Liberties & priviledges our pleasure is that the said subjects of us our Heirs & Successors shall enjoy without any notable Damage or Jnjury to be done to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns or the Jnhabitants of the said province or in any of the premises or in any of the said ports, Creeks, or Shoars aforesaid, but cheifly in the Woods there growing; And we do further for us Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns full Power & authority to divide all or any part of the Territories hereby granted or mentioned to be granted as aforesaid into Provinces, Counties, Cities, Towns, Hundreds & parrishes, or such other Parts or Portions as he or they shall think fit; & in them and every or any of them to appoint & allot out such portions of Land for publick Uses, Ecclesiastical & Temporal of what kind soever & to distrib-

ute grant assign & set over such particular Portions of the said Territories, Counties, Lands & premises unto such our Subjects or the Subjects of any other Province or State then in Amity with us our Heirs or Successors for such Estates & in such manner & formes as to the s^t Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns shall seem meet and Convenient, & the s^t person & persons according to the said Estate & Estates so Assigned & granted to have & enjoy the same, & to make, erect & ordain in & upon the said province & premises, or in & upon any of them or any part or parcell of them so many several & distinct Mannors as to the said S^t Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns from time to time shall seem meet, & to the same sev^{al} Mannors to assign, limit & appoint so much Land distinctly & severally for Demefne Lands of the said several Mannors, & every of them, as to the s^t S^t Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns shall & may seem necessary & fit, & the said manors or any of them to call by such Name & Names as the said S^t Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns shall please, The said Mannors to be holden of the s^t S^t Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns by such Services & rent as to him or them shall seem meet, & also that the said S^t Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns shall & may at their pleasure grant in Freehold so much of the said Demefne Lands, Tenements & Hereditaments belonging or to be belong^g unto any of the said Mannors or any Person or persons their Heirs & Assigns for & under such Rents & Services as to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns shall be thought fit to be holden of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns as of the said Mannors or any of them respectively, the Act of Parliam^t

made

made & enacted in the eighteenth Year of King Edward the first commonly called Quia emptores Terrarum or any other Statute whatsoever, or any other matter or things whatsoever to the contrary thereof in any wise notwithstanding, And that he the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns shall have, hold & keep within the said several Mannors so to be made & erected such & so many Courts, as well Courtleites as Court Barons³⁸⁸ as to our Laws & Statutes of England shall be agreeable; And We do further for Us, Our Heirs & Successors give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns for ever all Admiral Rights, Benefits & Jurisdictions & likewise all priviledges & Commodities unto the said Admiral Jurisdictions in any wise belonging or appertaining in & upon the Seas, Rivers & Coasts of or belonging to the said Province & premises, & every or any of them, or to the same adjoining within twenty leagues of the said province or premises or any of them, & in & upon all other the Rivers & Creeks thereof & likewise power to hear & determine all manner of Pleas for & concerning the same Saving always to Us, Our Heirs & Successors & to the Lord high Admiral of England for the time being of Us Our Heirs & Successors all and all manner of Iurisdictions, Rights, Powers, Benefits & Authorities whatsoever incident or belonging to the said Office of high Admiral, which it
shall

³⁸⁸ Both the Court Baron and the Court Leet were of remote origin. The former was composed of the free tenants only, while the latter was composed of all the residents within the bounds of the estate or manor. The Court Baron often assembled in the hall of the lord to whom those composing it owed fer-

vice; but the Court Leet was often so large as to make it necessary to convene in the open air. It was usually held twice in the year, within a month after Easter and a month after Michaelmas, and could not "unless by adjournment be held at any time not warranted by ancient usage."

shall and may be lawful from time to time to Us, Our Heirs & Successors, or to the Lord High Admiral of England for the time being to have use and exercise within the said province & premisces, & the Seas or Rivers thereof, or within twenty Leagues of the same as aforef^d when we shall think fit; And we do further for us, our Heirs and Successors give & grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns full power and Authority at any time, or times hereafter by him or themselves or by his or their Deputies to administer reasonable Oaths to all Judges Justices, Magistrates & other Officers whatsoever by the f^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns or his or their Deputies to be elected at y^e Election of them to their several Offices or places, or within convenient time after, & also that he the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs and Assigns shall have full power & Authority as well by him & themselves as by his or their Deputies or other cheif Magistrate or Officer by him or them to be in that behalf appointed to give & administer reasonable Oaths to all or any Person or persons of what degree or Quality soever employed, or to be employed in or about the said Province premisces & Territories aforesaid or any of them, or in or about the Coasts of the same, & likewise to all or any Inhabitants & others that shall be or remain within the f^d province & premisces or any of them, for the true & faithfull Execution & performance of their sev^{ll} Charges & places, as for the Examination & clearing of the truth, & likewise for the Information & better direction of his & their Judgm^ts in any matter or clause whatsoever and concerning the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns, or any Inhabitant, Member or person belonging or repairing unto

unto the f^d province & premises, or any of them, or any part of them, & in all Causes, Actions, Suits & Debates there to be begun & prosecuted as the Nature of the Cause shall require, And further of our more especial Grace, certain Knowledge & mere Motion, We do hereby for us, Our Heirs & Successors grant unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, that it shall & may be lawful to & for the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns & every of them from time to time to set to Sea such & so many Ships Pinaces, Barges, Boats & other Vessels as shall be thought fit by the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns, prepared & furnished wth Ordnance, Artillery, Powder, Shott, Victualls, Ammunition or other Weapons or Habiliments of War as well invasive as defensive in warlike manner or otherwise, & with such Number of Men, Women & Children as the f^d S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns shall think fit in such Voyage into the f^d Islands & places or any part thereof, as well for the plantation & Fortification thereof as otherwise, & that these Presents shall be a sufficient Licence & Warrent for any person or persons that shall be by him or them sent & employed thither to go beyond y^e Seas & in that manner so as the persons so to be shipped, sent or transported as aforef^d be not such as are or for the time being shall be prohibited by proclamation of Us, Our Heirs or Successors, or by any Order or Orders of the Lords or other Comm^rs for foreign plantations for the time being, And We do further for us our Heirs & Successors further covenant and grant to & with the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns, that only he the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his heires and
affignes,

assignes, & his & their Factors, Agents, & such as shall be employed sent, licenced or allowed by him or them, & no other Person, or persons whatsoever, except as before excepted, shall repair or go into the said province of Mayne & premises aforesaid, & the places within y^e Limits & Coasts thereof, or any of them, to dwell, inhabit or abide there, nor have use & enjoy the Liberty Use & priviledges of Trade or Traffick unto in or from the said Province & premises or any of them or buying felling, bartering or exchanging for or with any Wares Goods or Merchandizes there whatsoever; And likewise that it shall & may be lawful to & for the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Assigns, & for all & every other person or persons that shall be licensed or allowed by the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs or Assigns from henceforth & at all times, & from time to time after the date of these our Letters pattents according to the Orders & Constitutions of the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Assigns not being repugnant to Our Proclamations & Orders of the Lords & others our Comm^{rs} as afore^d to take, convey, carry & transport for & towards the plantation of the said province & premises or any of them, or to be used there or in the passage thither or returning from thence, & there to leave, abide and inhabit all such & so many of our loving Subjects, or any other straungers that will become our Subjects & live under our Allegiance as shall willingly transport themselves or be transported thither, & that such our Subjects or Strangers may together with their persons send, carry or convey thither as well Shipping, Armour, Weapons, Ordnance, Ammunition, Powder, Shott and Habiliments of War as Victuals, Canvas, Linnen, Woolen Cloth, Tools, Implements, Furniture,

ture, Swine & Pullen ³⁸⁹ Goods Wares, Merchandizes of all kinds and Sorts whatsoever fit & necessary for the Food, Livelyhood, Habitation, Apparel or Defence of Our Subjects which shall there inhabit & be, & all other, Wares, Merchandizes and Goods whatsoever not prohibited by the Laws or Statutes of this our Kingdom, paying Customs and other Duties as other our Subjects do in such Cases And of Our further royal favour we have granted & by these presents for us Our Heirs & Successors we do grant unto the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns that the aforesaid Province, Rivers & Places hereby before mentioned to be granted or any of y^m shall not be traded in or unto, nor inhabited by any of the Subjects of us our Heirs & Successors without the special Licence of the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns, And therefore we do hereby for us our heirs & Successors, further charge & command, prohibit & forbid all the Subjects of us our Heirs and Successors of what degree Quality or Condition soever they be, that none of them directly or indirectly presume to trade or adventure to traffick into or from, nor to inhabit or abide in the f^t province of Mayne, Islands, Dominions or places hereby mentioned or intended to be granted or any of them, other than the f^t S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs and Affigns, & his or their Deputies & Factors, unless it be with the licence & consent of the f^t S^r Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Affigns first had & obtained in that behalf in Writing under his or their hands & Seals under pain of our Indignation, & also of such penalties & punishments as by the Laws & Ordinances

³⁸⁹ Poultry.

nances of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns to be made in that behalf, shall be appointed; And we do further for Us, Our Heirs & Successors grant unto the f^d S^t Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns, that all & every the persons being the Subjects of Us Our Heirs & Successors, which shall go or inhabit within the f^d province & premises or any of them, & all & every the Children & Posterity descending of English Scottish or Irish Parents which shall happen to be born within the same or upon the Seas in passing thither or from thence, and from henceforth ought to be & shall be taken & reputed to be of the Allegiance of Us, Our Heirs & Successors, & shall be & so shall be forever hereafter esteemed to be the natural born Subjects of Us, Our Heirs & Successors, & shall be able to plead & be impleaded, & shall have power & be able to take by descent, purchase or otherwise Lands Tenements & Hereditaments & shall have & enjoy all Liberties, Franchises & Immunities of or belonging to any of the natural born Subjects of this our Kingdom of England, & within all or any other of Our Dominions to all Intents & purposes as if they had been abiding & born within this Our Kingdom or any other of Our Dominions; And We do further for us Our Heirs & Successors give full Power & Authority to the f^d S^t Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns or any Person or persons to be thereunto nominated by the f^d S^t Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns to minister & give Oaths of Allegiance and Supremacy according to the Forms now established in this our Realm of England to all & every such person & persons as they shall think fit, that shall at any time or times go
or

or passe into the f^d province & premises or any of them, or shall be resident or abiding there; And Our further Will & pleasure is, & We do by these Presents for us, Our Heirs & Successors covenant, promise & grant to and with the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Affsigns, that if he the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his heirs or Affsigns shall at any time or times hereafter upon any doubt which he or they shall conceive concerning the Validity and Strength of this our present Grant be desirous to renew the same from Us Our Heirs or Successors with Amendment of such Imperfections & Defects as shall appear fit & necessary to be reformed & amended by Us, Our Heirs & Successors, that then upon the humble petⁿ of the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affsigns, such further & better Assurance of all & singular y^e premises hereby granted or mentioned or intended to be granted according to the true Meaning of these Our Letters patents shall from time to time by Us, Our Heirs & Successors be made & granted unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affsigns, as by the Attorney Gen^l of us Our Heirs & Successors for the time being & the learned Council of the f^d Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affsigns shall in that behalf be reasonably devised or advised.

And further We do hereby for Us, Our Heirs & Successors charge & command all & singular Admirals, Vice Admirals, Generals, Commanders, Captains, Justices of the peace, Mayors, Sheriffs, Bailiffs, Constables Customers, Comptrollers, Collectors, Waiters, Searchers & all other the Officers & Ministers of us our Heirs & Successors whatsoever as well now as hereafter for the time being, to be
from

from time to time in all things aiding & assisting unto the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his heirs & Affigns & to his and their Officers Factors & Agents, & to every or any of them upon Request made, as they tender our Pleasure, & will avoid the contrary at their peril.

And We do Will & further for Us, Our Heirs & Successors do declare & ordain that the f^d province & premises shall be immediately subject to our Crown of England & dependant upon the same for ever.

And further We Will, & by these Presents for us, Our Heirs & Successors do grant to the f^d S^t Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns that this Our Letters Pattents or the Enrolment of them shall be in all things & to all Jntents & purposes firm good & effectual & sufficient in the Law against Us, Our Heirs & Successors, as well in all Courts as elsewhere within our Kingdom of England or in any other Our Kingdoms & Dominions as in the said Province & premises aforesaid or in any of them, & shall be construed reputed & taken as well according to the true meaning & Jntent as to the Words of the same most benignly, favourably & beneficially to & for the f^d Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affigns, no Interpretation being made of any Word or Sentence whereby Gods Word, true Christian Religion now taught, professed & maintained, y^e fundamental Laws of this Realm, or Allegiance to us, Our Heirs & Successors may suffer prejudice or diminution any Omission, Misinformation, want of certain Expression of the Contents, Limits & Bounds or the certain Situation of the said Province & Premises aforesaid, hereby meant or mentioned

tioned to be granted, or in what heighth, Latitude or Degrees the same are, or any Defect in these presents or any Law, Statute or other Cause or matter to the contrary notwithstanding; And altho' express mention be not made of the true yearly Value or Certainty of the premises, or any of them, and notwithstanding any misnaming & not certain or particular naming of the said province, places Lands, Territories, Hereditaments & premises whatsoever before by these presents given, granted, confirmed or mentioned & intended to be granted or confirmed or any part thereof, or the misnaming or not naming, or not rightly naming of the degrees & Coasts wherein or whereupon the same or any of them do lye, or any Act of Parliam^t Statute Ordinance, Proclamation or Restraint heretofore made ordeyned or provided, or any other thing cause or matter to the contrary notwithstanding; Nevertheless Our Intent & Meaning is that out of the premises hereby granted or mentioned to be granted there shall be always faved & reserved to all & every such person or persons as have or hath any lawfull Grant or Grants of Land or Plantations, lawfully settled in the division & premises aforesaid the Freeholding & enjoying of his & their Right with the Liberties thereunto appertaining, he and they relinquishing & laying down all his or their Jura Regalia if he or they have any, to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affsigns, whom we have hereby made proprietors of the Province or Division and premises aforesaid and paying some small Acknowledgment to the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affsigns, for that he & they are now to hold their said Land anew of the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges his Heirs & Affsigns.

Jn

In witness whereof We have caused these our Letters to be made patents, Witness Ourselves at Westminster the third day of April, In the fifteenth Year of Our Reign.

Per breve de privato Sigillo

WOLSELEY.³⁹⁰

Examined p J. WILLARD,³⁹¹ *Secry.*

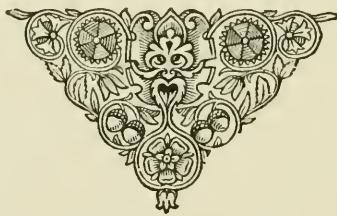
A true copy as of Record.

Examined. J. WILLARD *Secry.*

³⁹⁰ Sir Robert Wolfeley. He was clerk of the patents in Chancery, and was created a Baronet November 24th, 1628. He died September 21st, 1646.

³⁹¹ Josiah Willard, son of the Rev. Samuel Willard, pastor of the Old South Church in Boston, was born in 1681, and graduated at Harvard College in

1698. After completing his education, he spent some time in European travel, and upon his return to his native town was made secretary of the Colony of Massachusetts, which position he held at the time of his death in 1756. He was also Judge of Probate and a member of the Council.





THE WILL OF SIR FERDINANDO GORGES,

FROM THE PROBATE COURT AT WELLS, ENGLAND.

LONG ASHTON — TESTAMENTUM DOMINI
FERDINANDONIS GORGES, MILITIS.

In the name of God,

AMEN.

The ffourth day of MAY

in the Yeare of our LORD GOD

one thousand, six hundred, fortie & seven.



SIR FERDINANDO GORGES of LONG ASHTON, *in the COUNTIE of SOMERSET, KNIGHT, being sick of body, but of good memory, thankes be given to God, revoking all former wills & testaments, do make this my last will and testament, in manner & form following:*

FIRST. I bequeath my soule into the hands of Almighty God, my Maker & Redeemer, hoping assuredly through the death & passion of my Saviour Jesus Christ to have remission of my sinnes & to be made partaker of Life everlasting,

ing, And my Body I committ to the earth, from which it came.

Item. I give unto the Poore the some of Twentie Pounds to be distributed att such time & in such manner, as my ex^{rs} herein named shall thinke fitt,

The rest of all my goods, cattles, & chattles, debts & duties owing unto me whatsoeuer, I do freely give & bequeath unto my dearely beloved wife, DAME ELIZABETH GORGES, whome I do hereby make my sole ex^r of this my last Will & Testament & I do desire my loving friends, John Buckland of West Harptrry & Samuel Gorges of Wraxall in the Countie of Somerset. Esq. to be overseers of this my last Will & Testament, & to be assiting to my said ex^r as she shall have occasion.

In witnes whereof to this my last Will & Testament I have hereunto sett my hand & seale, even this fourth day of May, Anno Dom. 1647,

Memorandum, that the word *fourth* in the first line was interlined before the signing & sealing hereof, & was afterwards signed, sealed & published in the presence of S. Gorges,³⁹² Jo. Buckland,³⁹³ Ed Bell,³⁹⁴ William Satchfield.

F. GORGES.

³⁹² Samuel Gorges was the nephew of Sir Ferdinando, being the second son of his brother Sir Edward. He was born in 1604, and married Jane, the daughter of John Cotterell, Esq., of Winford, Somersetshire, and widow of John Allen, Esq., of Irvington. Samuel Gorges was a firm Royalist, and suffered imprisonment therefor under the Protectorate. His property was also seized, and to redeem it he was obliged to pay the sum of five hundred and eighty-two pounds for its release. He was buried

at Wraxall, December 27th, 1671. His wife survived him ten years. His will may be found in the Probate Court of Wells, and bears date October 20th, 1666.

³⁹³ John Buckland was probably connected by marriage with the family of Gorges. Certainly, Sir Robert Gorges and one of this name married sisters. The widow of Sir Ferdinando mentions this same John in her will, as one of her "loving Friends."

³⁹⁴ The Edward Bell here mentioned was



GENEALOGICAL NOTES
ON THE
FAMILY OF GORGES.



HAVE thought, in closing my work upon the life and literary remains of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, that an account of his lineage might be useful. Such a work has not hitherto been attempted, but from the numerous manuscript notes which I possess relative to the family in its various branches, I am enabled to present to the reader a fairly correct account of Sir Ferdinando's ancestors and descendants.

The family of Gorges derived its name from a hamlet near Carentan in lower Normandy, as previously stated. From this hamlet came Ranolph de Gorges in the train of William the Conqueror to the conquest of England. From this time, A.D. 1066, until about the middle of the thirteenth

was of Gloucester, and son of Edward Bell, Esq., of Writtle, Essex, the father of Sir Ferdinando's first wife, Ann; hence, he was the brother-in-law of Sir

Ferdinando. In his will, dated in 1649, he calls John Gorges, the eldest son of Sir Ferdinando, his nephew, which fully identifies him.

thirteenth century, the family of Gorges was influential; but the few records of these remote times which have come down to us, do not furnish data of a definite character respecting individuals.

7. RALPH DE GORGES. We shall begin then with Ralph de Gorges, the seventh in descent from Ranolph the Norman, who resided at Tamworth in Warwickshire, and for his first wife married a Devonshire lady, Margaret Foliot, of Tamerton Foliot,³⁹⁵ by whom he had a son, Thomas. Upon the decease of his wife Margaret, he contracted in the reign of Henry III. a second marriage with Eleanor de Morville,³⁹⁶ the only daughter and consequently sole heiress of her father, who possessed the manor of Wrokefhale, now known as Wraxall, which he had inherited through an ancestor, who, in the reign of King John, married the heiress of Richard de Wrokefhale. This estate, but a short distance from Bristol, became, as we know, the favorite seat of the family of Gorges for many centuries. Besides Wrokefhale, Ralph de Gorges inherited large estates in Dorsetshire and the Isle of Wight.³⁹⁷ Ralph de Gorges was a renowned warrior,³⁹⁸ and was with Henry III. when the latter was shut up in the city of Bristol by the rebellious citizens. He was in 1264 sheriff of Devonshire, and after a stormy

³⁹⁵ According to *Inquisitiones Post Mortem*, she died in 1239.

³⁹⁶ About A. D. 1250. Collins in his *Baronetage* spells her name Eleanor, and in *Lives of the Princesses of England*, by Mary Anne Everett Green, London, 1855, Vol. II. p. 300, it is spelled Elena. *Vide also The History of the Isle of Wight*, by Richard

Worsley, London, 1781, p. 205 *et seq.*

³⁹⁷ *Calendarium Genealogicum*; State Papers, 1255, 40th of Henry III.

³⁹⁸ Reference is made to him in the *Fædera* of Rymer, the *Testa de Nevil*, and documents relating to Ireland; 37th of Henry III.; Office of the Public Records.

stormy career died in 1271. His widow Eleanor, who assumed the guardianship of the children of Edward I., Eleanor and Joanna,³⁹⁹ survived him twenty years. He left a son by his second wife who also bore the name of Ralph (8).

8. RALPH DE GORGES married Margaret, the daughter of William and Cecilia Caleshall of Sturminster Marshall, in Dorsetshire, sometime before the death of his father, and by his wife became possessed of large estates. Of his career but little is recorded; but of his son Ralph (9), who succeeded him, we have many interesting particulars.

9. RALPH DE GORGES⁴⁰⁰ was born during the life of his grandfather, about A. D. 1266. He married Eleanor de Cave, by whom he added considerably to his estate. He was Marshal of the army of Edward I. in the wars in Gascony, in the year 1293, at which time he was made a prisoner by the French. Six years later he was still fighting in Gascony, and in 1301 held a knight's fee in Braunton, Devonshire. At the siege of Carlaverock he was one of the foremost chieftains in the assault, and for his bravery upon that occasion was celebrated in song by the minstrels, who immortalized in verse the heroic deeds of the English warriors who took part in the assault upon the famous fortress.

*"Sir Ralph de Gorges there I saw,
One newly bound to knighthood's law,
Down to the earth was prostrate thrown,
More than once struck by some great stone*

Or

³⁹⁹ *Vide Archaeologia*, Vol. XXXIX. p. 389. Also for an interesting letter of the Lady Eleanor, *vide Lives of the Princesses of England*, by Mary Anne Everett Green, London, 1855, Vol. II. p. 300.

⁴⁰⁰ *Vide Calendarium Genealogicum*; *The Siege of Carlaverock*, translated by Nicholas Harris Nicolas, Esq., London, 1828, pp. 74, 334-337; Rolls of Parliament, Vol. II. p. 46; also cf. Vol. III. p. 361.

*Or staggered by the rushing crowd.
Still to recede he was too proud.
Upon his arms and surcoat's fold
Was mästally of blue and gold."*

In the year 1303 he received permission to hold a yearly market "on the eve, day, and morrow of the nativity of the Blessed Virgin Mary,⁴⁰¹ and five days following; and a market Thursdays, in his manor of Siditon, Dorset." He also appears to have taken part in a tournament at Stepney in 1308, and the next year was one of the principal persons who attended the tournament in opposition to Gaveston, under the leadership of Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, and Guy, Earl of Warwick. During the same year he was summoned to Parliament at Westminster, "within one month of Easter." This summons, it appears from his writ *de expensis*, dated May 13th, 1309, he observed. On June 20th he was requested to make preparation to join the expedition against the Scots, and July 27th was again summoned to Parliament at Stamford. Three days later he received a summons to the muster at Newcastle-upon-Tyne, on Michaelmas Day,⁴⁰² to perform military service against the Scots; and, October 26th, was summoned by writ to attend a Parliament at York to convene on February 8th, 1310; but the place being changed, he received a second summons to attend at Westminister, orders enough to confuse a nervous man, as Sir Ralph was probably not. On September 8th he was summoned to appear at the muster at Berwick-on-Tweed. As to what he had actually done during the previous year

⁴⁰¹ September 8th.

⁴⁰² September 29th.

year we have no account. In 1310 he was one of the "Supervisors of Array" in the shires of Somerset and Dorset, and also "Leader of the Levies;" his commission being tested at Berwick on May 20th. On August 20th he was again summoned to Parliament at London, and resummoned as Baron to the Parliament held by prorogation at Westminster, November 5th. In 1314 he was again called into service against the Scots, having the year previous sat in Parliament, and was stationed during the next year in the north. In the three following years he was employed in military service. Being known as a friend of the Earl of Lancaster, who had illegally convened a meeting of the "Good Peers" to correct certain abuses of the crown, he was warned by the king to abstain from attending any illegal or treasonable conventions, which he doubtless observed, as his name appears shortly after as a witness to the king's signature. In the following year, 1322, he was summoned to raise as many men-at-arms and foot-soldiers as he could gather, and to hold himself in readiness to march with them to the king's support when summoned; and shortly after he received a summons to appear with his forces at the muster at Coventry, to march against the Earl of Lancaster and his adherents, then in open rebellion against the royal authority. A few weeks later he was summoned to Newcastle-upon-Tyne to oppose the Scots. Being one of the Commissioners of Array in the shires of Somerset and Dorset, he was actively employed in raising men for military service, as appears from the fact that on May 7th he was ordered to "surcease from empessing the services" of the people in the seaports of the two counties. On September

18th he was summoned to Parliament at Ripon, but the place of meeting was afterwards, on November 4th, changed to York. The days were pregnant with events, and within two weeks from this date he was commanded to assemble as many men-at-arms as possible, and to repair to such one of his manors as was nearest York, that he might be ready upon receiving the king's summons to march against the Scots. On December 10th he was commanded to march to York at the head of his men-at-arms, to appear at a muster on Feb. 1st, 1323. This closed an eventful year. He appears frequently in the year 1323, being summoned on April 18th to provide pack-saddles for the use of the army in case it should be deemed expedient to advance without the wagon train. On June 2d he was discharged from attendance at muster, probably owing to poor health. He died Nov. 29th, 1327.⁴⁰³ His widow appears to have married twice after his death; namely, to Guy de Ferrers, and later, to Sir John Peche. Ralph de Gorges left four children; namely, Ralph, who was born in 1307 and died without issue, and three daughters, Eleanor, Elizabeth, and Joan. We shall speak only of Eleanor (10).

10. ELEANOR GORGES married Sir Theobald Russell, who in 1311, at the age of seven, was left an orphan by the death of his father, Sir William Russell, of Kingston Russell, Dorsetshire.⁴⁰⁴ Upon reaching his majority in 1325, Sir Theobald received orders to attend the king at Plymouth, well

⁴⁰³ According to *Inquisitiones Post Mortem* at Carlton Ride.

⁴⁰⁴ At the death of Sir William Russell, the estates left to his son Theobald

well furnished and arrayed for the succor and defence of the Duchy of Guienne. In 1329 he was appointed one of the wardens of the Isle of Wight. There, at the head of the forces which he had gathered to repel the invasion of the French, he was mortally wounded in 1341, and was buried in the church at Gaveland. His wife, Eleanor Gorges, died before him, and left four children; namely, Ralph,⁴⁰⁵ William,⁴⁰⁶ Theobald (11), and Eleanor Russell.⁴⁰⁷ By a second marriage with Eleanor de la Tour, of Berwick, Dorsetshire, Sir Theobald Russell also left an heir from whom the Bedford family of Russell is descended. We however have to deal with

11. THEOBALD RUSSELL, who desiring to perpetuate in his family the honored name of Gorges, decided to assume the name of his mother; hence we will hereafter denominate him

bald were placed by the king, Edward II., in the custody of his favorites. The interests of a minor in property thus held were entirely overlooked, and when his inheritance finally came into the possession of the rightful owner, he usually found his houses in decay and his property of all kinds wasted. During his minority Sir Theobald was reduced to a pitiable condition owing to the manner in which his large estates were mismanaged by those in whose custody they remained, and he was obliged to petition the king and council for support. In this petition, which appears in the Rolls of Parliament, he recited the articles in Magna Charta providing for the maintenance of the king's wards by those to whom the custody of their property had been committed, and he complained that he had received nothing from them or from the king. His petition received a favorable response. Among the estates belong-

ing to Sir Theobald was the manor of Kingston Russell, mention of which frequently appears in the family papers. This estate was under lease at the death of Sir William, and was not therefore at the disposal of the king. According to the terms by which this manor was held, Sir Theobald was required to do homage for the investiture by officiating as the royal cup-bearer at the four principal feasts of the year; instead, however, his homage consisted in placing the chessmen upon the royal chessboard and restoring them to their place upon the completion of the game.

⁴⁰⁵ Sir Ralph Russell died in 1376, leaving heirs. His line was continued by his son Sir Maurice. See pedigree in possession of the author.

⁴⁰⁶ He died in 1342, and his manor of Knighton-Gorges descended to his brother Theobald.

⁴⁰⁷ Eleanor married John Fitz John.

him Sir Theobald Russell Gorges. He married Agnes Beauchamp of Watch, Somersetshire. In 1362 he obtained from Edward III. a patent to hold a market at Wraxall every Thursday, and a yearly fair on the eve, day, and morrow of All Saints,⁴⁰⁸ and the five following days. In a charter of the City of Bristol in 1373 he appears as a commissioner, and in 1376 is mentioned in a writ *de expensis* for thirty-nine days' attendance as a Knight of the Shire of Southampton. In 1380 he was High Sheriff of the shires of Somerset and Dorset. He died in 1381, and was buried in the Church of Preaching Friars at Winchester. His will, proved May 9, 1381, is among the Lambeth wills at Lambeth.⁴⁰⁹ Sir Theobald Russell Gorges left four children; namely, Ralph,⁴¹⁰ Bartholomew,⁴¹¹ William,⁴¹² and Thomas Gorges (12). Of these we will consider the latter.

12. THOMAS GORGES became by the death of his brother the heir of his father, and married Agnes, the widow of Thomas Norton.⁴¹³ He was a large landed proprietor, and appears to have avoided the stormy path of war which his father and grandfather so persistently pursued, and to have lived upon his estates, enjoying life as he could well afford to enjoy it. He reared a family of four children; namely, John,⁴¹⁴ Theobald (13), Isabella,⁴¹⁵ and William,

⁴⁰⁸ November 1st.

⁴⁰⁹ *Vide* also Ashmolean Manuscr.'ts, Bodleian Library, 1137, p. 144.

⁴¹⁰ Sir Ralph, the eldest son, died in 1381, shortly before his father. *Vide* Inquisitiones Post Mortem, 5th of Richard II., Carlton Ride.

⁴¹¹ Bartholomew, who was Patron of Bridport, Dorsetshire, died in 1396. *Vide* Inquisitiones Post Mortem, 20th of Richard II.

⁴¹² William died without heirs.

⁴¹³ *Vide* Manuscript 7851, British Museum.

⁴¹⁴ John Gorges died in 1414. His wife Florence survived him and contracted a second marriage. She died in 1423. *Vide* Inquisitiones Post Mortem, also Index to Exchequer Records.

⁴¹⁵ Isabella is mentioned in her mother's will as unmarried.

William,⁴¹⁶ and died in the year 1403. His widow survived him fifteen years.⁴¹⁷ We will follow the career of their second son, Theobald (13).

13. SIR THEOBALD GORGES. His brother John having deceased, Theobald became the heir of his father, and about A.D. 1430 succeeded to the Manor of Horsington and North and South Cheriton, Somersetshire, and in 1432 is recorded as Knight of the Shire of Somerset. Sir Theobald in 1437 was in command of forces which marched to the relief of Croydon.⁴¹⁸ He was also at this time governor of the Castle of Rouen, and seems to have been an adherent of the Duke of York, and a pious churchman, but during his later years somewhat impecunious. He died in 1468,⁴¹⁹ and was buried at Wraxall Church, where may be seen this inscription, formerly in the chancel, but now in the north aisle :—

*"Here lyeth Sir Tybot Gorges
Knyghte and Banneret
of whose soul God have mercy.
Amen, 1468."*

Sir Theobald was twice married; first, to Agnes de Wyke, in the chapel of Court de Wyke, Gatton, Somersetshire, October 15th, 1433, by whom he had three children; namely,

⁴¹⁶ William Gorges is mentioned in his mother's will, but we have no further record of him.

⁴¹⁷ According to *Inquisitiones Post Mortem*, Carlton Ride. A copy of her will is in the possession of the author.

⁴¹⁸ *Vide Letter of Henry VI.* relating

to siege of Croydon, Manuscript 3830; also add Charters, I. 496, and an impression of his seal in the British Museum.

⁴¹⁹ *Vide Inquisitiones Post Mortem*, 10th of Edward IV., Carlton Ride, and Strachey Papers, British Museum.

namely, Walter, Elizabeth,⁴²⁰ and Jane;⁴²¹ and, secondly, Joan, the daughter of John Beauchamp, of Lilliford. By this lady he had a son, Richard Gorges.⁴²² Sir Theobald's eldest son, Walter (14), who died in his father's lifetime, A.D. 1466, we will now consider.

14. WALTER GORGES married Mary Oldhall, only daughter and sole heiress of Sir William Oldhall, a partisan of the Duke of York during the Cade rebellion, and does not appear to have taken an active part in State affairs during his brief career. He left at his death in 1466 one son, Edmund Gorges (15).

15. SIR EDMUND GORGES. Being left a minor, Edmund Gorges was placed in ward to John Lord Howard.⁴²³ We first meet with him after attaining his majority, among the gentlemen, ushers and esquires of the household at the grand wake of Edward IV.; by which it appears that he was attached to that monarch's court.⁴²⁴ From this time he played an important part in court life, and was evidently a popular factor in the pageants and festivals of the period.

⁴²⁰ Elizabeth Gorges married Thomas Grenville.

⁴²¹ She married John Hatch, of Dillon, Devonshire. *Vide the Genealogist*, Part 7, p. 319.

⁴²² To him his father bequeathed Horfington and lands in Sturminster Marshall. He died in 1480. *Vide Inquisitiones Post Mortem*, Richardus Gorges armiger, 20th of Edward IV. A copy of the will of his wife, Matilda, is in the possession of the author.

⁴²³ This appears from Herald's visitations in the reign of Edward IV.

⁴²⁴ He was created K. B. at the cre-

ation of Arthur, Prince of Wales, in 1489. *Vide Letters and Papers of Richard III. and Henry VII.*, Vol. I. p. 8, where he is spoken of as taking part in the "grand wache." He is also mentioned as appointed to meet the ambassadors of France on the occasion of their visit to England in 1492, to negotiate a peace, and also to welcome Catherine of Arragon in 1501; and his name appears in the Household Book of Edward Stafford, Duke of Buckingham. *Vide Archaeologia*, Vol. XXV. A. D. 1833.

period. Sir Edmund was thrice married; first, to Lady Anne Howard, daughter of John Howard, Duke of Norfolk, who fell at Bosworth Field in 1485, and sister of Thomas, Duke of Norfolk, who won the battle of Flodden Field. She was therefore grand-aunt to Anne Boleyn and Catherine Howard, the queens of Henry VIII. By her he had three sons; namely, Edward (16), William,⁴²⁵ and John,⁴²⁶ and a daughter, Margaret.⁴²⁷ His second wife was Joan Hampton, the youngest daughter of John Hampton, of East Hampton. At the time of her marriage with Sir Edmund she had been already twice married. She died August 20th, 1505, leaving a son Walter, concerning whose life no particulars have come down to us. His third wife was Joanna, daughter of Thomas Coplestone. At this time she was the widow of Sir Morgan Kydwelly, of the Isle of Purbeck. This lady survived Sir Edmund, and consoled herself by a third marriage with Simon Littlecoat, of Orcheston, Wiltshire.⁴²⁸ Sir Edmund Gorges died in 1512, and was buried in the chancel of All Saints Church at Wraxall.⁴²⁹

16. SIR EDWARD GORGES, the eldest son of the preceding, was born in 1483, and resided at the old manor of Wraxall. His name frequently appears in early documents of the sixteenth century, and in several connected with the war

⁴²⁵ He is mentioned among the captains who received ordnance at Southampton in 1513, and at a banquet at Greenwich. Leland in his *Itinerary*, began in 1540, thus alludes to him: "Wrokehall is three miles from Wyke towards Brightstowe. Here hath Sir Will Gorges a mean old maner place in a valley, and on each side of it on the hills is a fair park."

VOL. II.—21

⁴²⁶ John's name does not appear in the records of his time.

⁴²⁷ Margaret married Thomas Newton, who died s. p. August 25th, 1525. She was living a widow in 1545.

⁴²⁸ He died in 1524.

⁴²⁹ Sir Edmund repose under a magnificent altar-tomb where may be seen his effigy and that of his lady. He is represented in full armor, with a chain of

war between England and Scotland in 1513. Henry VIII. at this time was at war with France, and while he was thus engaged the Scotch marched across the border. In this war, which culminated in the battle of Flodden Field in September, Edward Gorges served as a captain. He was also the next year one of the commissioners of peace, at which time he had bestowed upon him the honor of knighthood. After this he occupied various civil positions, and was in 1529 made high sheriff for Somersetshire. From this date until near that of his death, which took place February 11th, 1565, at the age of eighty-two, his name is frequently met with in various records;⁴³⁰ but he seems to have led the peaceful life of a country gentleman of that period. He was buried in the chancel of the church at Wraxall with his ancestors. He married Mary, the daughter of Sir Anthony Pointz,⁴³¹ and was the father of eight children;

of gold about his neck, and she in a loose robe with long sleeves and a hood thrown back from her face. About the tomb are the coats-of-arms of the family. A copy of his will is in the possession of the author.

⁴³⁰ *Vide Sheriffs' Roll for Somerset and Dorsetshire; Subsidy Rolls, 14th, 15th, 34th, and 35th of Henry VIII. History of the Nunneries of Somerset, by Rev. Thomas Hugo; Registers of the Parish Church of Wraxall; Inquisitions Post Mortem, and his will, a copy of which is in the possession of the author.*

⁴³¹ There is some confusion attending the records of his marriage. According to Herald's visitations and printed pedigrees, he is represented as marrying first, Mary, daughter of Sir John Newton, and secondly, Mary, daughter of Sir

Anthony Poyntz. Referring, however, to the pedigree of Sir John Newton, in the Rawlinson Manuscripts, Bodleian Library, Clas. 13, No. 66, p. 80, dated 1586, which was compiled during the lifetime of Sir Henry Newton, the son of Sir John, it does not appear that the latter had a daughter Mary, and no marriage of a daughter of Sir John with Sir Edward Gorges is mentioned; besides, Sir John Newton himself married Margaret, a daughter of Sir Anthony Poyntz; was born in 1496 and died in 1568, and was thirteen years the junior of his reputed son-in-law. This, of course, might be possible; but the opinion of the Rev. Frederick Browne, given the author, is that Sir Edward Gorges married only Mary, the daughter of Sir Anthony Poyntz, and sister of Margaret, wife of Sir John Newton.

children; namely, Edmund (17), Sir William,⁴³² Sir Nicholas,⁴³³ William, of Alderton,⁴³⁴ Sir Thomas,⁴³⁵ Jane,⁴³⁶ Elizabeth,⁴³⁷ and Mary.⁴³⁸

17.

⁴³² Sir William Gorges resided at Charlton Manor, and rose to distinction in the British navy. His name appears in the roll of royal pensioners, 1556-1582. He is mentioned in the Lansdowne Manuscripts, British Museum, as Captain under Admiral Winter in 1560. Six years later he was a volunteer in the war between the Hungarians and the Turks. In a letter of September 20th, 1568, from Maximilian II. to the queen, the latter is requested to show favor to the bearer, William Gorges, who has well behaved himself at his court, and during the last expedition against the Turks. He soon returned to England, as we find him granted a license in 1572 to import barrelled fish, and in 1579 was knighted in Ireland by Sir William Drury. The next year he was serving as admiral of the fleet on the Irish coast. On his return to England he captured a noted English pirate named Derwall. He married in March, 1565, Winifred, daughter of Roger Budockshad and Frances Champernowne, aunt of the Gilberts and of Sir Walter Raleigh. His death took place in 1584 in the Tower of London, where he was buried. An interesting letter of his wife, the Lady Winifred, may be seen among the Lansdowne Manuscripts, 109, fol. 187. It is as follows:—

COSIN HICKES.—Though I clame nor know any debt due, yet finding this among many others of greater value, I pray you keep it for a remembrance when occasion shall serve to speak a good word to the Lord Treasurer, who ought to be pricked in conscience to helpe me, considering how many payfull journeys Mr Gorges served in his chargeable fute & long delayes, what toyle bestowed on the Tower which I nor any of mine might enjoy. If I could have

gotten for every thousand but a hundred, it w^d have pleased me, though the recompence had been smalle. I have beeene & am very fikel, w^d fayne go to Bathe to get helthe, but my purse is so weake I am not able. I lye in an od corner of my Lady Russell's as much as I shifte to pay hir rente. I spoke to my Lord; he will go to His Majesty—a futor wanting helthe & money shall get little at the Courte but more grieve. I hope if any w^d remember his Honour, he w^d shewe some ptyfull favour. If you will be the instrument you shall ern onner for a recompence, besides the poor widowes prayers. I doubt not but God will prosper you the better for my hartes commendacions. I bid you farewell.

My lodgings by Russell House this VI of April.

Your cosin & friend,

WINIFRED GORGES.

Endorsed: LORD STAFFORD.

The Lady Russell above mentioned was her sister-in-law. The Lady Winifred's appeal, it is pleasant to record, was not unnoticed; since in the Signet Book in the Public Records Office, under date of April 4th, 1586, appears the following entry: "A gifte to *Ladie Winifred Gorge of such forfeitures as may happen to the value of £300.*" Moreover, as she "w^d fayn go," she evidently went "to Bathe to get helthe," since she died there and was buried at Bath Abbey Church in 1599. *Vide* also Lansdowne Manuscripts, XLIX. fol. 28; *Ibid.*, "Observations on a Seafight," by Sir Wm. Gorges; *Ibid.*, Burghley Papers, British Museum.

⁴³³ Sir Nicholas Gorges married first a daughter of Sir Gyles Poole, and secondly, Mary, daughter of Francis Southwell, of Windham, Norfolk. This lady, whose tomb may be seen in St. Patrick's Church, Dublin, married after the death of

17. EDMUND GORGES. He married in 1531 Ann Walshe, daughter of Sir John Walshe, of Little Sodbury, Gloucestershire,

of Sir Nicholas, Sir Conyers Clifford, and after the latter's death Sir Anthony St. Leger. Sir Nicholas Gorges attained distinction in the navy, and was a member of Parliament in 1585. He died in 1594, and was buried in St. Martin's Church, Ludgate. *Vide Star Chamber Proceedings, 10th Elizabeth*, for interesting proceedings against him; Burghley State Papers, p. 549; a letter from Nicholas Gorges on board the Swiftsure, September 27th, 1570; State Papers, Elizabeth, Public Records Office; *The Progresses, Processions, Festivities, and Pageants of Queen Elizabeth*, by John Nichols, London, 1804, Vol. II. p. 145; Records on the Lord Treasurer's Remembrancer's side of the Exchequer, under date of 1570; Correspondence of Robert Dudley, Earl of Leycester, during his Government of the Low Countries: Camden Society, London, 1844, pp. 42, 293, 306.

⁴³⁴ William Gorges, of Alderton, married Cicely, the daughter of Thomas Sparchford, Northants. He died June 2d, 1589, and was buried in Alderton Church under a fine tomb of freestone, which no longer exists; but the slab which formerly covered it may be seen in the floor at the northeast angle of the walls.

⁴³⁵ Sir Thomas Gorges was born at Wraxall, in 1536, and was an important personage at the courts of Elizabeth and James. At the marriage of the Earl of Warwick to the daughter of the Earl of Bedford, in 1565, Thomas Gorges was one of the knights who answered the challengers at the tournament, which formed a part of the wedding festivities of the occasion; and from that time to his death the old records make frequent reference to him. Thus

in 1572 the queen presented him with a New Year's gift, "guilt plate 8 oz;" and the Queen of Scots in a letter to Elizabeth speaks of him as "un de vostre chambre Gorge." In 1586 he was M. P. for Downton, Wilts, and in July, 1603, was knighted at Beddington, Surrey. He married Helena, the Marchioness of Northampton, daughter of Wolfe Snachenberg, who came to England in the train of the Margrave of Baden in 1565. Their daughter Elizabeth married Sir Ferdinand Gorges. He died March 30th, 1610, aged seventy-four. His tomb is one of the grandest in Salisbury Cathedral, and bears upon it, under a magnificent canopy, the effigies of himself and his noted wife Helena. *Vide Records on the Lord Treasurer's Remembrancer's side of the Exchequer, 1579*; Lansdowne Manuscripts, 50, art. 91, British Museum; State Papers, Domestic, James I., Public Records Office, under date of 1603; Heylyn's *History of the Reformation*, Vol. II. p. 420 *et seq.*; *England as Seen by Foreigners*, by William Brenchley Rye, London, 1865, p. liv.

⁴³⁶ Jane Gorges married John Aysfie, Esq., of Tickenham, Somersetshire, who died September 23d, 1560; and she married, previous to 1566, Sir Robert Stafford. She was buried in Hounslow, Stafford, November 13th, 1591.

⁴³⁷ Elizabeth Gorges married John Wake, of Hartwell and Clevedon, and thus became the ancestress of Wake, archbishop of Canterbury.

⁴³⁸ Mary Gorges married John Morgan, but no record of her remains except that she is mentioned in the will of Edward Gorges, the father of Sir Ferdinand, as his aunt.

tershire, and settled down to the life of a country gentleman, wisely eschewing the vile and cruel Court of Henry VIII., and all part in the affairs of a government which brought so many to the block. Edmund Gorges died March 31st, 1558,⁴³⁹ seven years before the death of his father, and left the following children: Edward (18), Robert,⁴⁴⁰ Henry,⁴⁴¹ John,⁴⁴² Francis,⁴⁴³ Samuel,⁴⁴⁴ Mary,⁴⁴⁵ Alice,⁴⁴⁶ Jane,⁴⁴⁷ Margaret,⁴⁴⁸ and Ann.⁴⁴⁹ We will only speak of

18. EDWARD GORGES. He was born about 1537, and married Cicely,⁴⁵⁰ daughter of William Lygon, of Madresfield,

⁴³⁹ *Vide Inquisitiones Post Mortem at Wells, August 5th and 6th, 1558.*

⁴⁴⁰ Robert Gorges is mentioned in Chancery proceedings in a suit brought against him in 1578 by Henry, Lord Berkeley, and in the funeral certificate of his brother Edward. He was buried at St. Margaret's, Westminster, May 9th, 1583.

⁴⁴¹ Henry Gorges died young, as he is mentioned in the Chancery proceedings of Lord Berkeley, before alluded to, as dead at the time his brother Edward was married.

⁴⁴² John Gorges was buried at St. Margaret's, Westminster, February 5th, 1593. On the registers of the parish appear the names of six of his children.

⁴⁴³ Francis Gorges married Margaret —, who is thus alluded to in the will of Sir Nicholas Gorges, October 28th, 1594: "I give to my niece Gorges, late wife of Mr. Francis Gorges, deceased, a ring worth £3." Francis Gorges was buried at St. Margaret's, Westminster, May 2d, 1590.

⁴⁴⁴ Of Samuel Gorges, the sixth son of Edmund Gorges, we have no account.

⁴⁴⁵ Mary Gorges married James Percival, of Weston-in-Gordano, near Wraxall. She died s. p.

⁴⁴⁶ Alice Gorges was married at Wraxall, October 23d, 1569, to Henry Dodington, of Loxton, Somersetshire. She was buried in the parish of Christon, June 6th, 1587. The names of nine of her children are recorded in the registers of Wraxall.

⁴⁴⁷ Jane Gorges was married to Walter Crouch. She is mentioned in the wills of Nicholas Gorges and the Lady Helena, but beyond this we have no account of her.

⁴⁴⁸ Margaret Gorges was married to the Rev. William Jones, and had two children; Matthias, baptized August 29th and buried December 2d, 1579, and Christopher, baptized July 30th, 1581. She died February 17th, 1582. The following inscription may still be read on her tomb: "Here lyeth the bodies of William Jones, B. C. L., one of the Prebendaries of Wells & Rector of Wraxall. Also of Margaret Jones, his wife, dau. of Edmund Gorges, Esq."

⁴⁴⁹ She is mentioned as one of the presenters to the living of Wraxall in 1574.

⁴⁵⁰ She survived her husband and became the wife of John Vivian.

field, Worcestershire. Like his father, Edmund, Edward Gorges took no part in the public affairs of his time; indeed, his brief life hardly afforded scope for the beginning of any marked career, as he died at the age of thirty-one years. His death took place at Clerkenwell, in the suburbs of London, August 29th, 1568, and he was buried there in the parish church of St. James. He left two young children, Edward⁴⁵¹ and Ferdinando Gorges (19), the latter of whom has attained celebrity largely on account of his efforts in establishing colonies in New England; indeed, he has been termed the "Father of American Colonization."

19. SIR FERDINANDO GORGES was the nineteenth in descent from Ranolph the Norman, and, as we have seen, descended from a long line of notable ancestors, whose vigor, courage, and manliness he conspicuously displayed. For military achievements he was knighted in the field before Rouen in 1591 by the Earl of Essex, whom he came so near following to the scaffold. As the particulars of his life have been given elsewhere in this work, they will not bear repeating.

⁴⁵¹ Edward Gorges, the eldest son and heir, was baptized at Wraxall, September 5th, 1564, and entered Hart's College, Oxford, in 1582. He married previous to 1590 Dorothy, daughter of Sir John Speke and Dorothy Gilbert. He was high sheriff of Somersetshire in 1608. His children, twelve in number, were as follows: Robert, afterwards Sir Robert; Samuel, born in 1604; Elizabeth, married at Wraxall, January 28th, 1606, to Master Francis Trenchard; Dorothy, married at Wraxall, January 20th, 1603, to Mr. William Carey; Ann, married at Wraxall, September 29th, to Mr. Edward Tynte; Edward,

born 1593, and died in 1594; Edmund, baptized at Wraxall in 1594; Frances, married before 1610 to John Luttrell, Esq.; Isabel, married to John Aishe; Thomas, afterwards the Rev. Thomas, baptized at Wraxall, February 12th, 1602; William, baptized at Wraxall, February 2d, 1605, and in 1635 sent to New England by Sir Ferdinando as his deputy, with full authority for his government of New Somersetshire. He died February 9th, 1658. Lastly, Dorothy, baptized at Wraxall, September 8th, 1608, who married Mr. Donne, of Tufswell, according to the will of her brother Thomas.

peating here. He was married, as has been before stated, four times; first on February 24th, 1589, at St. Margaret's, Westminster, to Ann, daughter of Edward Bell, Esq., of Writtle, Essex, and by her had four children; namely, John (20), Robert, Ellen, and Honoria. The two daughters died young. The Lady Ann died August 26th, 1620, and was buried at St. Sepulchre's, London. His second marriage was to Mary, sister of Sir Francis Fulford, knight, and relict of Thomas Achim, Esq., of Hall, Cornwall, who died in 1619. Lady Mary Gorges died in 1622. Sir Ferdinando married thirdly, on December 6th, 1627, Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Tristram Gorges, and widow, first of Edward Courtney, of Landrake, Cornwall, and second, of William Bligh, Esq., of Botathan, Cornwall. She died at Ladock, Cornwall, where she was married to Sir Ferdinando, March 19th, 1628. Sir Ferdinando married, September 28th, 1629, fourthly, Lady Elizabeth Smythe, daughter of Sir Thomas Gorges, knight, and widow of Sir Hugh Smythe, knight, of Ashton Court, at Wraxall. After his marriage, Sir Ferdinando went to reside at Lower Court, or Ashton Phillips, as it was called, the property of Lady Elizabeth, and there he died. We will now consider briefly his sons, John and Robert Gorges.

We will first speak of Robert, the second son of Sir Ferdinando, who was baptized at Clerkenwell November 15th, 1595, and who, following the example of his father, adopted the profession of a soldier. At the age of twenty-five he was engaged in military duties on the continent, the scene of his father's early experience in war; but upon returning to England, in 1622, was sent by Sir Ferdinando to govern his Province

Province of Maine. His sojourn in New England was unsatisfactory, and he soon left the country and returned home, where he died not long after his arrival; and leaving no heirs, the Province which had been bestowed upon him by his father passed to his elder brother, John Gorges (20).

20. JOHN GORGES, the eldest son of Sir Ferdinando, was born April 23d, 1593. He was first married July 30th, 1620, to the Lady Frances Fynes, daughter of the Earl of Lincoln;⁴⁵² and second, to Mary, daughter of Sir John Meade, knight, of Wendon-Lofts, Essex. His death took place April 6th, and his wife's death September 15th, 1657. They were both buried at St. Margaret's Church, Westminster. Their children were, Ferdinando (21), born at Wendon-Lofts, August 19th, 1630; Cifilia,⁴⁵³ baptized at St. Margaret's Church, Westminster, February 14th, 1631; Jane, baptized at the same church, July 24th, 1632, and Ann,⁴⁵⁴ born May 2d, 1635. We will speak of Ferdinando, the only son of John Gorges.

21. FERDINANDO GORGES. Having inherited his father's title to the Province of Maine,⁴⁵⁵ Ferdinando Gorges on the eve of the Restoration of Charles II. petitioned to have his rights in the Province, then in possession of Massachusetts,

⁴⁵² *Vide* marriage registers of St. James, Clerkenwell.

⁴⁵³ She was married to Mr. Abraham Chapman, of West Hampnett, Sussex, May 6th, 1652.

⁴⁵⁴ Of Jane we have no further record. Ann died unmarried at the age of twenty years. Her will was dated December 8th, 1655, and eleven days later she was buried at St. Margaret's, Westminster.

⁴⁵⁵ The following is an extract from his will: "To Ferdinando, over and above his marriage portion, all my jewels, books, and wearing apparel & household stufte; also my Patent of the Province of Maine in New England & all other Patents, writings, & muni-ments,—together with a cabinet of writings belonging to me, with all my maps & pictures."

chusetts, restored to him. He had already, in order to advance his interests in New England, published under the general title of AMERICA PAINTED TO THE LIFE, two tracts of which he was the author, and a manuscript left by his grandfather, entitled A BRIEFE NARRATION. The petition⁴⁵⁶ referred to was considered in Council, and a committee was appointed to investigate the subject, and take testimony respecting it.

After several meetings and long delays, on June 8th, 1664, a report favorable to Ferdinando Gorges was made to the King by Sir Geofrey Palmer. Upon receiving this report, the King immediately issued a proclamation to the inhabitants of Maine, setting forth the claims of Gorges, and commanding them to deliver to him or his commissioners quiet and peaceable possession of the Province, without delay, or to show reason to the contrary.

Upon receiving this proclamation, Ferdinando Gorges at once employed his brother-in-law, John Archdale,⁴⁵⁷ to bear it to New England, in company with the royal commissioners appointed by the King to establish his royal authority over New England, and who were then ready to sail with two ships of war, the *Guinea* and *Elias*, carrying in the aggregate sixty-six guns. Archdale reached Boston on

July

⁴⁵⁶ This petition may be found in this volume, page 213. A joint petition by Gorges, Mafon, and Sterling, but only signed by Mafon, had been previously made, and is printed in full in *New England Vindication*, edited with notes by Charles Edward Banks, M.D., published by the Gorges Society, Portland, Me., 1884, pp. 41-46. The origi-

nal is in the Public Records Office. Vol. XIII. No. 79.

⁴⁵⁷ John Archdale subsequently became governor of North Carolina, and by his public spirit and enterprise became a favorite with the people, whose welfare he greatly advanced by promoting the cultivation of rice in the colony. He remained in New England about a year, when he returned home.

July 23d, 1664. The royal commissioners were not welcome in Massachusetts, and their mission proved a failure. Archdale and two of the commissioners, Sir Robert Carr⁴⁵⁸ and Samuel Maverick,⁴⁵⁹ at once proceeded to Piscataqua, and set the machinery in motion to win the inhabitants of Maine to the support of Gorges. There were still many loyalists in Maine, and they joined earnestly with the King's commissioners in their efforts. A government of the Province under the authority of Gorges was organized, and the commissioners addressed a letter to Massachusetts, "requesting In the name of our selves, & the people of the s^d province, you^r courteous & peaceful disceadure from further commanding vs & them." This was accompanied by a proclamation commanding "a resignation from all persons usurping" the government of the Province, and notifying them of the unlawfulness of such proceeding, "Pticularley to ye Governor & Councell of y^e Massachusets Colonie; protesting against their intermeddling wth y^e government thereof, as they will answer y^e Contrary att his Maiesties indignation." This was met promptly by the Massachusetts government, with the reply that their original charter comprised within its bounds the territory claimed by Gorges, which charter antedated the patent of 1639 to his grandfather, under which he claimed

⁴⁵⁸ Sir Robert Carr was appointed in 1664 one of the royal commissioners to bridle the spirit of liberty in the colonies, which Lord Clarendon affirmed had "already hardened into republics." The commissioners, in command of four frigates and three hundred men, captured New Amsterdam from the Dutch and named it New York, in honor of the Duke of York. The Dutch and Swedes

on Delaware Bay were also brought under subjection to the English power. Their rule in Maine was of short duration. Carr returned to England and died at Bristol, June 1st, 1667.

⁴⁵⁹ For an account of Maverick, *vide A History of East Boston*, by William Sumner, A. M., Boston, 1858, pp. 45, 46, 53 *et passim*.

claimed title. We will not follow the bitter controversy which ensued. Baffled in his attempts to set up the government of Gorges in Maine, Archdale in a few months returned to England.

But Ferdinando Gorges possessed something of the spirit of his grandfather, and was not disposed to yield his claims quietly. Though interested in the extension of British commerce to England's West India possessions, he did not lose sight of his interests in Maine, and he constantly pressed his claims upon the attention of the King, who was too much occupied with troubles near at hand to give much attention to affairs across the Atlantic. In these efforts to recover his New England inheritance he was ably seconded by Robert Mason, who had been dispossessed like himself of territory adjoining the Province of Maine, called the Province of New Hampshire.

After years of fruitless labor, in response to the joint petitions of Gorges and Mason, the King on December 10th, 1674, addressed a letter to the "Corporation of Boston in New England," in which he signified it to be his royal pleasure to appoint commissioners to repair to New England in order to inform themselves of the nature of the differences existing between the rival claimants, and to report thereon. Various schemes to realize something from his New England possessions suggested themselves to Gorges, who was evidently not at all confident that he should be able to establish authority in his Province of Maine. One of these schemes was to dispose of his title for a money consideration to the King, and on February 24th, 1675, he made such a proposition. Not being accepted, he went so far as to offer,

on

on March 20th, in conjunction with Mason and Lord Sterling, to surrender his title upon having secured to him one third of the net income or profit which should be received from the Province; or if this were too much, such reasonable compensation as the King might think proper. This shows how discouraged he had become through long-continued failure to establish his claims; but a brighter hour was coming for him. The Lords of the Committee of Trade and Plantations directed the Attorney and Solicitor-General to examine his claim, and the result was a report on May 17th, that his title to the Province of Maine was a valid one. This was a great triumph for Gorges and revived his hopes. It was resolved by the Lords of the Committee to do "something effectual for the better regulation" of governmental affairs in New England, and Edward Randolph,⁴⁶⁰ a kinsman of Mason, was selected as the royal agent, who also acted as the representative of Gorges and Mason.

Randolph's mission, as we know, was a failure, and he returned home disappointed, and full of bitterness against Massachusetts, who now took an aggressive attitude, and sent able representatives to England to prosecute there her claims to the soil both of Maine and New Hampshire, with private instructions to negotiate with Gorges and Mason for a purchase of their claims if this could be done for a small sum, so as to settle the troublesome and expensive controversy. Upon the arrival in England of the representatives of Massachusetts, they encountered a hostile sentiment which had been sedulously

⁴⁶⁰ Randolph made himself unpleasantly conspicuous during the government of Sir Edmund Andros and shared

his imprisonment in 1689. After his release he went to the West Indies, where he died.

lously fostered against them by Randolph. The King, too, was privately negotiating for the purchase of the Province of Maine of Gorges, whose title had been declared to be valid, for his illegitimate son, the Duke of Monmouth;⁴⁶¹ but not suspecting that he had a rival, his movements towards accomplishing his design were slow, and affairs were allowed to drag. At this juncture, John Usher,⁴⁶² a merchant of Boston, who was acting as the agent of Massachusets, adroitly opened secret negotiations with Gorges, and for twelve hundred and fifty pounds succeeded in obtaining a transfer to himself of the latter's title to the Province of Maine, and with this title in his possession immediately sailed for New England. Thus was extinguished forever the title of the heirs of Sir Ferdinando Gorges to his Province of Maine. Many years afterwards, in 1691, Ferdinando Gorges made one more effort to recover possession of the Province, the title to which he had sold to John Usher, as the agent for Massachusets, basing his claim upon the fact that the Charter of Massachusets having been declared void, under *quo warranto* proceedings in England, her title to the Province was also void; but in this he was unsuccessful, and Massachusets thereafter continued in peaceable possession of the property. Ferdinando Gorges was married on May 22d,

1660,

⁴⁶¹ James, Duke of Monmouth, was born at Rotterdam in 1649, and educated a Roman Catholic. His father bestowed many favors upon him, and appears to have been warmly interested in his welfare; but in spite of this, he headed a rebellion against his royal parent. Failing of success, he retired into Holland, and when his uncle, James II., ascended the throne, he invaded the

kingdom with a force, hoping to secure the throne for himself. He attacked the king's forces at Sedgemoor, where he was defeated and made a prisoner. He was beheaded July 25th, 1685.

⁴⁶² For an extended account of him, *vide The Trelawny Papers*, published by the Maine Historical Society. Portland, 1884, p. 401.

1660, at St. Bride's Church, London, to Mary Archdale, daughter of Thomas Archdale, of Chipping Wycombe, Buckinghamshire. Their children were Mary, born in 1661, who died in 1689, unmarried; Ferdinando (22), born in 1665; Thomas, who died in 1665; Elizabeth, born May 8th, and was buried September 22d, 1669; Cecilia, baptized at St. Margaret's Church, June 22d, 1670, and was married to one Moody, and Ann, baptized at the same church, January 9th, 1671. Ferdinando Gorges died January 25th, 1718, at the age of eighty-nine years,⁴⁶³ and was succeeded by his son, Ferdinando (22).

22. FERDINANDO GORGES married in 1705 Catherine Foyle, of Somerford, Wiltshire. Their children were Richard, born at Ashley, September 18th, 1712, and died February 15th, 1722; Ferdinand, baptized September 28th, 1712, and died in infancy. By the death of Ferdinando Gorges, the great-grandson of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, who was buried at Ashley, February 20th, 1738, the male line of the "Father of New England Colonization" became extinct.

THE

⁴⁶³ The following is the inscription upon his tomb in Ashley church:—

"Near this place lieth the Body of Ferdinando Gorges Esq., late of Westminister, sometime Governor of the Province of Maine in New England.

"He was born at Loks in Essex, & was grandson & heir of Sir Ferdinando Gorges of Ashton Philippis, Somt. Esq.

"He married Mary, the eldest daughter of Thomas Archdale, of Loks in Chipping Wycombe, Esq.

"They were eminent examples of Virtue,

and entirely happy in their mutual affection, & had many children, of whom only two survived their indulgent and tender parents.

"He was charitable and patient, courteous & beneficent, zealous and constant to the church, and a great admirer of Learning.

"He is interred in the same Grave in which Sir Theobald Gorges was buried 1647, 2nd son to the Marchioness of Northampton and Uncle to Richard Lord Gorges.

"Obit. 25. Jany. A.D. 1718, aged 89."

THE LITERARY WORK OF FERDINANDO GORGES.

So much has been written concerning the literary work of the grandson of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, that it is thought best, even at the risk of being charged with performing supererogatory work, to fully examine the Gorges Tracts, so called, consisting of four distinct works, usually bound together, and of which the third is the work of Edward Johnson, which was published anonymously five years before the other three works, which are genuine works of the elder and younger Gorges.

This third tract, the "Wonder Working Providence" of Johnson, has in place of its original titlepage a spurious one, bearing upon it the name of the elder Gorges; which has caused several writers to bring against the younger Gorges the grave charge of fraud. Let us carefully examine the question.

The book is prefaced by a cut of a female Indian, seated, and holding a bow in the right and a portion of a human leg in the left hand, while in the background are several stakes impaling human heads, and a band of savages roasting a captive. On the obverse of this cut is the following:—

“AMERICA.

*'Tis I, in tempting divers, for to try
By sundry meanes, t' obtaine me, caus'de them dye
And, last discouer'd, vndiscouered am:
For men, to tredae my Soyle, as yet, are lame."*

Some copies have a somewhat different frontispiece. In this picture a female Indian, similar to the one already described, is

is sitting under a tree and holding a bow in her left and an arrow in her right hand. At the left of her head is a parrot and scroll with the words, “*Pavit qui genuit;*” while in the background are cannibals; one dismembering a human body, another roasting one of its limbs, and yet another shooting at a deer. Under this picture is the following verse, the word “AMERICA” being above the left shoulder of the female Indian: —

“*Though to my Sisters long vnknowne I lay
I am as rich, and greater farr then they.
My barbarous rudenes doth at full exprefc
What Nature is, till wee haue Graces dres,
But when the gloomy shades of Death yet bee
The sunshine of Gods love I hope to see.”*

Following the engraving in both instances is a rubricated titlepage as follows: —

America
Painted to the Life.

The True
H I S T O R Y
OF

The Spaniards Proceedings in the Conquests of the INDIANS, and
of their Civil Wars among themselves, from COLUMBUS
his first Discovery, to these later Times.

AS ALSO,

OF THE ORIGINAL UNDERTAKINGS OF THE
ADVANCEMENT OF
Plantations in those parts;

With

With a perfect Relation of our English Discoveries, shewing their Beginning, Progress and Continuance, from the Year 1628 to 1658. Declaring the Forms of their Government, Policies, Religions, Maners, Customs, Military Discipline, Wars with the *Indians*, the Commodities of their Countries, a Description of their Towns and Havens, the Increase of their Trading, with the Names of their Governors and Magistrates.

More especially, an absolute *Narrative* of the North parts of *America*, and of the Discoveries and Plantations of our English in

VIRGINIA, NEW ENGLAND, and BERBADOES.

Publisht by FERDINANDO GORGES, Esq.;

A Work now at last exposed for the Publick good, to stir up the Heroick and Active Spirits of these times, to benefit their Countrey, and Eternize their Names by such Honorable Attempts.

For the Readers clearer understanding of the Countrey's, they are lively described in a compleat and exquisite Map.

Ovid, *Auri sacra fames quid non.*

LONDON. Printed for Nath. Brook at the Angel in *Cornhil*. 1659.

Following this is an introduction by Ferdinand, the grandson of Sir Ferdinando Gorges,

“To the Judicious Reader,”

of four unnumbered pages, signed “Ferdinando Gorges,” and then a map of the Western Hemisphere. We now come to

A

DESCRIPTION

OF

NEW ENGLAND

of

of fifty-one pages, written by Ferdinando Gorges, the grandson, signatures B to H, and on last page the catchword "A :" and then the "Briefe Narration" of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, containing fifty-seven pages, signatures I to P, with no catchword on last page, which bears the word "Finis." The following is the title:—

A
 B R I E F E N A R R A T I O N
 O F T H E
Original Undertakings
 O F T H E
 A D V A N C E M E N T
 O F
 P L A N T A T I O N S
 Into the parts of
A M E R I C A

*Especially Shewing the beginning, progres and continuance of that of
 NEW ENGLAND,*

Written by the right Worshipfull Sir *Ferdinando Gorges*
 Knight and Goverour of the Fort and Island of *Plymouth* in DEVON-
 SHIRE.

L O N D O N

Printed by E. *Brudenell*, for Nath. *Brook* at the *Angell* in *Corn-hill*, 1658.

It should be observed that this Brief Narration has no Preface, and that it is followed by another work entitled

AMERICA

AMERICA
Painted to the Life

A

True History of the originall undertakings of the advancement of Plantations into these parts, with a perfect relation of our ENGLISH Discoveries, shewing their beginning, progres, and continuance, from the year, 1628, to 1658, declaring the forms of their Government, Policies, Religions, Manners, Customes, Military Discipline, Warres with the INDIANS, the Commodities of these Countries, a Discription of their Townes, and Havens, the increase of their trading with the names of their Governours and Magistrates.

More

Especially an absolute Narrative of the North parts of AMERICA, and of the discoveries and plantations of our *English* in
NEW ENGLAND.

Written by Sir FERDINANDO GORGES Knight
and Governour of the Fort and Island of *Plimouth* in DEVONSHIRE,
one of the first and cheifest promoter of those Plantations.

Publisht since his decease, by his Grand-child *Ferdinando Gorges*
Esquire, who hath much enlarged it and added severall
accurate Descriptions of his owne.

A work now at last exposed for the publick good, to stir up the heroick and active spirits of these times, to benefit their Country, and Eternize their names by such honourable attempts.

For the Readers clearer understanding of the Country's they are lively described in a compleat and exquisite Map,
Vivit post funera virtus.

LONDON: Printed by *E. Brudenell*, for *Nathaniel Brook* dwelling at the Angel in *Corn-hill*, 1658.

After

After this titlepage comes this Preface:—

To the Reader.

I thought it a part of my duty, in this my briefe Narration of our Plantations to remember the Originall Undertaking of those designes in the parts of America, by such Noble Spirits of our Nation that first attempted it, as well for the justification of the right thereof, properly belonging to Kings of our Nation, before any other Prince or State, as also the better to clear the claime made thereunto by the Embassadour of France, in the behalfe of his Master, in the yeare 1624. whereunto I was required to make answer (as more at large it appeares in the discourse it selfe, withall to leave to posterity the particular wayes by which it hath beene brought to the height it is to come unto, wherein the providence of our Great GOD is especially to be obserued, who by the least and weakest meanes, oftentimes effecteth great and wonderfull things; all which I haue endeavoured to contract in as short a compasse, as the length of the time and the variety of the accidents would give leave, as for the truth thereof, I presume it is so publicquely known, as malice it selfe dares not onely question it, though I know none, I thank my God to whom I haue given any just cause malitiously to attempt it unlesse it be for the desire I had to do good to all without wronging of any, as by the course of my life to this present it may appear.

If in the conclusion of my undertaking and expence of my fortunes to advance the honour and happineſſe of my Nation, I have ſetled a portion thereof to thoſe that in nature muſt ſucceed me; you may be pleased to remember that the Labourer is worthy of his hire. That I haue not exceeded others not better deserving that I go hand and hand with the meanest in this great worke, to whom the charge thereof was committed by royal Authority, That I haue opened the way to greater imployments and ſhalbe (as a hand ſet up in a croſſe way) in a deſert Country to point all travellers in ſuch like kind, how they may come ſafe to finiſh their journeys and leaſing an example to others best affeſted to designes of ſuch like nature to prosecute their intents for further in largement of thoſe begun Plantations,

Plantations, without trenching or intruding upon the rights and labours of others already possessed, of what is justly granted them.

Especially of such, who in some sort may be termed Benefactors as Secondary donors of what (by Gods favour) is had, or to be had from those springs they first found and left to posterity to bath themselves in, but if there be any, otherwise affected, as better delighted to reap what they haue not soun, or to posses the fruit another hath laboured for, let such be assured, so great injustice will never want a wofull attendance to follow close at the heeles, if not stayed behind to bring after a more terrible revenge ; But my trust is such, impiety will not be suddenly harboured where the whole work is I hope still continued for the enlargement of the Christian faith, the supportation of justice, and love of peace, in assurance whereof, I will conclude and tell you (as I haue lived long) so I have done what I could, let these that come after me doe for their parts what they may, and I doubt not but the God that governs all, will reward their labours that continue in his service, to whom be Glory for ever, Amen.

FERDINANDO GORGES.

Following this Preface is the

Wonder-working PROVIDENCE
OF
SIONS SAVIOUR.

Being a Relation of the first planting in *New England*, in the
Yeare, 1628.

This is a work of two hundred and thirty-six pages, with signatures B to Hh, and was written by Edward Johnson. The book closes with a second instalment of "America Painted to the Life," under the following title:—

AMERICA

Genealogical Notes on the

AMERICA

Painted to the Life.

THE
HISTORY
OF THESpaniards Proceedings in AMERICA, their Conquests of the
INDIANS, and of their Civil Wars among themselves,
FROM
COLUMBUS his first Discovery, to these later Times.BY
FERDINANDO GORGES, ESQ;Ovid, *Auri sacra fames quid non.*

London, Printed by T. F, for Nath. Brook at the Angel in Cornhil, 1659.

This contains fifty-two pages, signatures B to H, and a "General Table" of seventeen pages, with three pages of book advertisements. To sum up, then, the entire book contains as follows:—

"A Description of New England," by Ferdinand Gorges the younger, including cut, titlepage, four pages of introduction, and printed map	58 pages.
"A Briefe Narration," by Sir Ferdinando Gorges	58 "
"Wonder-working Providence," including titlepage of "America Painted to the Life," and two pages of Preface, bearing the name of Sir Ferdinando Gorges	239 "
"America Painted to the Life," by Ferdinando Gorges the younger, including titlepage and two pages of Preface, with twenty pages of General Table and Advertisements	72 "
In all	Pages 427

I am particular in describing these books because it seems necessary to point out exactly where the fraud, if such was really intended by the publisher, comes in; and it will be seen that it lies simply in prefacing the "Wonder-working Providence" of an anonymous author, now known to have been Edward Johnson, with a Preface bearing the name of Sir Ferdinando Gorges and the titlepage of "America Painted to the Life." This piece of deception has been charged upon Ferdinando Gorges the younger, who has been denominated a thief, a plagiarist, absurd and mendacious. Though Ferdinando Gorges the younger was not a man of letters, he did not merit this abuse. He prepared in good faith for the printer two tracts upon New England, where he owned a princely domain, between which he placed a tract left by his grandfather. His own work, he honestly states, was drawn "out of the choicest Authors, as Davity, Jean de laet, Anthony Herrera, Oviedo, Francis Ximenes, Champlain, Sparbot, and others." Such an admission would not be made by a plagiarist. These three tracts were probably published together in one book, as they are sometimes found. One who studies them is at first puzzled at finding the date 1659 on the first one and 1658 on the second; but the fact that the signatures are continuous shows that this was a printer's error. He is again puzzled to understand why the second tract ends with the word "Finis" and has no catchword on the last page, and to find that, while the signatures in the first two tracts are continuous, they again begin the alphabet in the third. This, however, is explained by the fact that the third tract was not printed by the person who printed the first two tracts.

We

We will now examine the work bound with these three tracts shortly after their publication. This was entitled

A
HISTORY
OF
NEW ENGLAND.

From the English planting in the Yeere 1628. untill the
Yeere 1652.

and bore the running-title of

Wonder-working Providence *Of Sions Saviour, in New England.*

It was an anonymous work, and was published by Nathaniel Brooke in 1654, five years before the date of the first tract of Ferdinando Gorges. A number of copies of this work having been left upon his hands unsold, Brooke conceived the idea of binding them with the works of the two Gorges which were upon the same subject, and which, it is quite probable, after a very limited sale, also became *satis superque* upon his hands. What more natural than that the thrifty publisher should put these various accounts of New England together and try to create a new demand for the more complete work? Had he not prefaced the anonymous work with the title of "America Painted to the Life," which was the title of the Gorges tracts, and with a Preface purporting to have been the work of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, he would not have merited censure; but having done this, he cannot escape condemnation. The original Gorges tracts, three in number, were published in 1659, and were probably bound together as now occasionally found. How long after this time



Fold-out Placeholder

This fold-out is being digitized, and will be inserted at a future date.

time the publisher, Brooke, added to them the “Wonder-working Providence” we do not know; but, fortunately for the posthumous fame of Ferdinando Gorges, he discovered the fraud, and promptly denounced it in a public manner. This act of Gorges, however, it is but fair to say, was unknown to the critics, since his denunciation of the fraud was hidden away in an old newspaper, “The Mercurius Publicus,” bearing the date of September 13th, 1660, and of which but one copy, now in the British Museum, is known to exist. This important evidence of the innocence of Gorges is as follows:—

ADVERTISEMENT.

I FERDINANDO GORGES, the entituled Author of a late Book, called AMERICA PAINTED TO THE LIFE, am injured in that additional Part, called SION'S SAVIOUR IN NEW ENGLAND, (as written by SIR FERDINANDO GORGES;) that being none of his, and formerly printed in another name, the true owner.

This, of course, forever exonerates Ferdinando Gorges from the charge of fraud with which his critics have so cruelly assailed his memory.⁴⁶⁴

SKETCH

⁴⁶⁴ The following interesting letter from the Additional Manuscripts, No. 6789, fol. 123, in the British Museum, relates without doubt to this work, which he desired some of his friends to see before publication, in order that he might have their opinion of it; or, as he quaintly puts it to his friend Heryott, “to bee Goffyps wth you; att thys Baptyfme.”

M^r Heryott, now that I have doone my best and all to thys discoursse I shall praye

you bestow an hower or so in readinge it for y^t tyme wyl largely suffyse, as to my good frende I recomend yr paynes, and as to a moste Judytious mynde, I defyre y^e overlookeinge of my overfyghts. Sr lett me entreat you to call M^r Carleton and Mr Warner, to bee Goffyps wth you; att thys Baptyfme And excuse my boldnes in thys; because y^u have power to comande me in a farr greater matter, as

Y^r true and lovinge frende

F. GORGES.

It requyres p^{re}sent favoure for y^t to morrow I mighte carry it wth me to London.—

SKETCH OF THOMAS GORGES.

THOMAS GORGES, Deputy Governor of the Province of Maine, under the Lord Proprietor of the Province, from 1640 to 1643, was the eldest son of Henry and Barbara Gorges,⁴⁶⁵ and was born in 1618. He was bred to the law, and had just finished his legal studies when called by his cousin, Sir Ferdinando Gorges, to represent him in the government of New England. That he was unusually mature for his years we may properly infer, not only from the all too brief notice of him by Winthrop,⁴⁶⁶ but also from his wise administration of affairs while in Maine; an administration characterized by a skill and prudence worthy of age and experience.

Upon his arrival in the country, he waited at once upon Governor Winthrop, and wisely sought his advice; after which, without unnecessary loss of time, he proceeded to the scene of his labors, where he found affairs in a deplorable condition, the inhabitants, mostly fishermen, being too poor to obtain the necessary comforts of life.

The Province was without a government, and the outlook for a satisfactory administration of affairs was anything but

⁴⁶⁶ Henry Gorges was born in 1580. He was the son of Robert Gorges and Winifred Budockhead before mentioned. His wife Barbara was the daughter of Thomas Baynard of Wanftrow, Somersetshire, and Alice Hyde. Their children were as follows: Thomas, the subject of this sketch; John, Governor of Londonderry; Robert, a Doctor of Civil Law; Ferdinando, a captain in the army; Ann, married to Edward,

Duke of Wilsford, Wiltshire; and Elizabeth, who died unmarried in 1668. Henry Gorges died in 1649, and lies buried with his wife in Cheddar Church, the registers of which have unfortunately been lost. A copy of his will is in the possession of the author.

⁴⁶⁶ *Vide The History of New England*, by John Winthrop, Esq., Boston, 1853, Vol. II. p. 11.

but encouraging; yet, with commendable energy, the new governor at once opened a court, and began the task of bringing some order out of the chaos which everywhere prevailed.

A glance at the records of the first court under the new administration, begun June 25th, 1640, gives one an idea of the disorder which prevailed among the people scattered along the coast.

In his dealings with the people of the Province his prudence and equity are conspicuous. Though he was firm, as we know from several cases which are recorded, he avoided acts which might appear arbitrary.

He seems to have had a general supervision of his kinsman's interests in the Province, as we find him, soon after his arrival, in conjunction with Vines, purchasing cattle of John Winter, the agent of Trelawny at Richmond's Island, on account of the Lord Proprietor, and paying for them in a draft upon Moses Goodyear of Plymouth, from whom he had a letter of credit; besides, he was engaged in disposing of titles to land, though this business was not brisk.

While engaged in his onerous duties, affairs were taking place in England, which could not fail to make him uneasy.

A great revolution had for some time been threatening, and its dread rumblings were being constantly blown across the water, increasing the difficulties of his administration, and causing him anxiety for interests at home; hence we find him after three years of faithful toil relinquishing the government of the Province.

Until his return to England in 1643, he resided about a mile above Gorges Point, so-called, and the cellar of his house

house was pointed out as an object of interest until within a recent period.

Unlike his kinsman, Sir Ferdinando, Thomas Gorges was opposed to royalty, and, espousing the cause of the people in the Civil War, was made, in 1649, Lieutenant-Colonel of Cavalry in the Somerset militia.

Some time after, he is mentioned as a Commissioner of Accounts in Parliamentary proceedings;⁴⁶⁷ and still later as a member of Parliament from Taunton, having as his associate his brother, John Gorges. If credit is to be given to statements of his opponents, he was severe in his treatment of them, as in a "Narrative of the Late Parliament" in 1657, we read that "*Col. Thomas Gorges & his brother, have racked the consciences, flayed off the skins and broken the bones of the poor people, making them swear against themselves.*"⁴⁶⁸ At this time he was Commissioner for the County of Somerset to raise funds, which had been assessed by Parliament for the support of the Spanish war. He appears from letters preserved in the British Museum,⁴⁶⁹ to have been active in Parliamentary affairs in 1658, and did not lose his position with the collapse of the Protectorate, since immediately after the Restoration he was returned to his seat by the influence of the Crown, which shows in what esteem he was held, even by those to whom he had been opposed.

Thomas Gorges was twice married,—first, to Mary, the youngest daughter of Martyn Sandford and Susannah Sydenham

⁴⁶⁷ *Vide House of Commons Reports, May 23d, 1652.*

⁴⁶⁸ *Vide The Harleian Miscellany, London, 1810, Vol. VI. p. 469.*

⁴⁶⁹ *Vide Lansdowne Manuscripts, Brit-*

ish Museum. Letters of Colonel Thomas Gorges, of February 15th, March 1st, 3d, and 22d, 1658; also, Savage's History of Taunton.

Sydenham. Their children were: Thomas, born about 1651;⁴⁷⁰ Ferdinando, who died in February, 1683, at York, Maine, where his father had resided forty years before; having come to New England as early as 1674, perhaps in the interest of his kinsman, Ferdinando, the grandson of Sir Ferdinando, and proprietor of the Province of Maine; Henry, who emigrated to Barbadoes;⁴⁷¹ Susannah, born in 1649, and married to Rawlin Mallack, Esq., of Cockington, the son of her father's second wife. Susannah died April 17th, and was buried in the Church at Heavitree, on April 20th, 1673.

The second wife of Thomas Gorges was Rose, the daughter of Sir Jerome Alexander, Knight, and widow of Roger Mallack, Esq., of Cockington. They were married at Heavitree, March 23d, 1656, and their children were: Alexander, born July 29th, 1660; Elizabeth, baptized at Heavitree, April 4th, 1662; and Edward, born May 15th, 1666, and buried at Heavitree, June 14th, 1667. He resided at the time of his death, which took place at the age of fifty-two, at Heavitree, near Exeter.

On a monumental stone in Heavitree Church, the following inscription above the Gorges Coat of Arms may still be read:—

“Here lyeth the bodyes of Thomas Gorges of Hevitree, Esq. and Rose his wife. He departed this life the 17th of October 1670, and she the 14th of April 1671.

The

⁴⁷⁰ He entered Wadham College, Oxford, in 1668, at the age of seventeen years.

slaveholding planter in 1668 and several years later. He is mentioned in *Hotten's List of Emigrants to America*, p. 462.

⁴⁷¹ He was living in Barbadoes as a

*The loving Turtell, having mist her mate
Beg'd she might enter, ere they shut the gate —
Their dust here lies, whose Soules to Heaven are gone,
and wait, till angels rowle away the stome."*

As so little has heretofore been published respecting Thomas Gorges, who was an interesting figure in the early history of Maine, it is thought best to append to this sketch of the man a copy of his will.

THE WILL OF THOMAS GORGES, ESQ.

SEPTEMBER 25. 1669.

IF I die near Cheddar, to be enterred near my Father & Mother; If by Minehead, near my first & virtuous wife Mary. If near Wraxall, then near my ancestors there interred.

To Samuel Gorges of Wraxall & my dear brother Ferdinand Gorges, all my lands tenements &c. water grist mill in Flax Boniton &c. for five years after my death, in case my son & heir may then accomplish the age of 24 to demand all rents &c.

My eldest son Thomas Gorges hath the Inheritance of a handsome tenement in Devon out of which he is to be paid £25.10 yearly, high rent.— I bequeath to him one great silver tankard with the whirlpool ingraven on it, being the ancient coat of my family.

Money to be raised from the estates in Brooke &c. to bind my son Ferdinand an apprentice & for the carrying on of the trade to which he shall be bound.

To

To my son Alexander & my daughter Elizabeth, £100 each.

To my son Thomas, also, whereas I have a good and indefeasible estate of inheritance in 5000 acres of land, lying on the river Ogarnogg, otherwise Ogunigg in the Province of Maine in New England, granted unto me for considerations, in my Deed thereof bearing date Aug. 4. 1641, under the Seal of the Provence therein expressed by Sir Ferdinando Gorges then Lord Provincial of said Province of Maine according to the power and right he had then to the said province and every part thereof, which said deed of Feoffement being now in my custody, was also then enrolled among the Records of said Province — and of which 5000 acres I took peaceable and quiet possession on August 18, 1642. all which lands & cattle thereon, I give unto my son, Thomas Gorges.⁴⁷² Also to him, my farm at Battcumbe, together with the lease I purchased of my brother Robert Gorges, Doctor of Civil Law, known by the name of Great Smead.

To Ferdinando Gorges, a two handled cup of silver with the cover having on it the arms of Gorges & Sanford. Ferdinando has property in Audrey, Somerset, given him by his kinsman & Godfather, John Tint.

To my daughter Sufannah, now wife of Rawlin Mallack of Cockington, Esq., — £700, and all such plate, chains, rings, jewels, & linen that were her mothers, or such as I brought off from Minehead, together with my silver watch, and gilded cabinet, one basin & three dishes of china — the works that I now have of Bishop Hall's and all those I have of Baxter's — the

⁴⁷² This deed for five thousand acres found in York Deeds, Portland, 1887, of land on the Ogunquit River may be Book I. Part II. fol. 5, 6, and 7.

192 *Genealogical Notes on Gorges Family.*

— the two books known by the name of “ St. Giles, Criplegate Morning Exercises.” All which, I hope she will read & labor to understand & practice accordingly.

Rawlin Mallack & Ferdinando Gorges my brother, to be Trustees of my manors of Over and Nether Trewynt in the parish of Poundstock, Cornwall for the use of my children Alexander and Elizabeth.

20/- for a ring to Martin Greenwood & Ann his wife, to my brothers & sisters, to my brothers-in-law and sisters-in-law.

THOMAS GORGES

First Adm'n papers to Rose Gorges, relict, Second after Rose Gorges' death to Ferdinando Gorges, for the use & during the absence in parts beyond the seas, of Henry & Ferdinando Gorges, sons of the testator.

DOCUMENTS
RELATING TO
THE PROCEEDINGS
TAKEN BY
FERDINANDO GORGES, Esq.,
FOR THE RECOVERY OF
THE PROVINCE OF MAINE.

NOTE.—These Documents are verbatim copies of those in the Office of the Public Records, and in the British Museum, London. Other Documents relating to the same subject, gathered from the Massachusetts Archives, may be found in the *Documentary History of Maine*, Vol. IV., published by the Maine Historical Society and edited by the author of this work.



DOCUMENTS

RELATING TO

THE PROVINCE OF MAINE.

PETITION OF FERDINANDO GORGES, ESQ., TO THE KING.

O the Kinges most Excellent Ma^{tie}.

The humble Petiōn of Ferdinando Gorges
Esq^r sonne & heire of John Gorges Esq deceased
who was sonne & heire of S^r Ferdinando
Gorges Kn^t deceased.

Most humbly showeth:

That the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges yo^r Petiōners Grand
father being divers yeares Since chiefly instrumentall in
discovering & reduceing of New England in America to the
obedience & Governem^t of the lawes of this kingdome and
haveing spent many yeares time & vast Sumnes of money
therein whereby he exhausted the greatest part of his fort
tune, and the same being thereby brought to some perfection
& hopes of advantage Yo^r Ma^s late Royall father of ever
blessed memory in the XVth yeare of his raigne was gra
cously pleased to graunt unto the Said S^r Ferdinando Gorges
yo^r

yo^r Petiçoners said Grandfather his heires & Assignes for ever a Patent of a considerable part thereof called the Province of Mayne the same conteyning every way 120 miles wth very many large Privileges & Immunities As in & by the said Patent under the greate Seale ready to be produced it doth & may at large appeare, Long before & fince w^{ch} said Graunt yo^r Petiçoners Grandfather at his very greate charges hath sent over severall persons as his Deputies to Governe the said place.

That certaine English Inhabitants in New-England called the Mathethewfits takeing Advantage of the late Rebellion here (dureing w^{ch} time yo^r Petiçoner dust not assert his right to the said premisses) have without Any colour of right encroacht upon all or upon the greatest part of the said premisses discended unto yo^r Petiçoner from his Grandfather as aforesaid And that Severall other persons who in trueth at most were but Tenants under some yearly rent & other services unto some small & inconsiderable part of the said premisses under yo^r Petiçoners Grandfather doe now clayme the same as Lords & Proprieto^{rs} thereof whereby yo^r Petiçoners Grandfathers vast expences aforesaid are like to be utterly lost and his Patent (w^{ch} was the greatest Patrimony that yo^r petiçoners Grandfather left him) wilbe rendered unprofitable to him without yo^r Ma^{ts} most graçous help & assistance.

Yo^r Petiçoner therefore humbly prayes yo^r Ma^{tie} to take this matter into yo^r most graçous consideraçon the fame being of very greate concernem^t unto this yo^r Kingdome of England or els That yo^r Ma^{tie} would be pleased to referre the consideraçon thereof to yo^r

Counsell

Counsell for forraigne Plantaçons to examine the whole matter & yo^r Petiçoners title thereunto and to certifie yo^r Ma^{tie} the trueth of the premisses.

And yo^r Petiçoner as in duetie bound shall ever pray fo^r yo^r Ma^{ts} long and prosperous raigne.

At the Court at White hall the 4th of April 1661. His Ma^{tie} is graçously pleased to referre this petiçon to the Councell for forreigne Plantaçons who upon due consideraçon and examinaçon had of the Pe^{trs} title to the premisses and what is by him alleadged are to certifie his Ma^{tie} how they finde the Pet^{rs} Cafe to stand together wth their opinions what is fitt to be done thereupon for his just relieve. And then his Ma^{tie} will declare his further pleasure.

(Colonial Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. XIV. No. 59.)

COMMISSION TO EDWARD HYDE, LORD CHANCELLOR,⁴⁷³ ETC.

THE Copie of His Ma^{ts}: Commission for a Councill for Forraine Plantations / ⁴⁷⁴

I. Instrucçons for the Councill appointed for Forraigne Plantations /

Orders and proceedings of ditto.

M^r

⁴⁷³ Edward Hyde, Earl of Clarendon, the author of the *History of the Great Rebellion*. He was an eminent jurist, and unjustly accused of high treason, for which he was obliged to go

into exile. He was born February 18th, 1608, and died at Rouen, December 9th, 1674.

⁴⁷⁴ A commission was issued from Westminster, December 1st, 1660, to Edward

M^r Ferdinando Gorges petition (formerly referred to this Counsell by his Ma^{tie} being this day read It is ordered that my Lord of Marlborough,⁴⁷⁵ my Lord of Portland,⁴⁷⁶ my Lord D'Acre,⁴⁷⁷ my Lord Berkeley,⁴⁷⁸ M^r Boyle,⁴⁷⁹ M^r Wil-

loughbie,

Edward Hyde, Lord Chancellor; Thomas, Earl of Southampton, Lord Treasurer; Edward, Earl of Manchester, Lord Chamberlain; Theophilus, Earl of Lincoln; John, Earl of Clare; James, Earl of Marlborough; Jerome, Earl of Portland; William, Viscount Say and Sele, and others, as the king judged it necessary, that so many remote colonies and governments, "so many ways considerable to our crown, should be brought under an uniform inspection and conduct for their future regulation, security, and improvement." This Council for Foreign Plantations consisted of thirty-five persons, taken from the nobility, gentry, and merchants; and authority was granted "to any five to take into their consideration the condition of the foreign plantations, according to instructions annexed." These instructions were, "To inform themselves of the state of the plantations, and by what commissions they are governed, copies of which, and of all grants, are to be registered in a book to be provided for that purpose." A correspondence was also to be opened with the various Governors, and measures were to be adopted to render "those dominions and England mutually helpful, to bring them into a more uniform government, and order the better distribution of justice." In fact, this Council was to regulate and encourage navigation and emigration; "to provide learned and orthodox ministers for the plantations;" to consider missionary work among the natives; and "to dispose of all matters relating to the good government, improvement, and management of the plantations."

This document contains the names of but fifteen of the Council. *Vide Domestic Correspondence*, Charles II., Public Records Office, Vol. XIV., under date of June 19th, and December 1st, 1660.

⁴⁷⁵ Sir James Ley, the third Earl of Marlborough, was eminent for learning, as well as a distinguished naval commander. He was Lord Admiral of the fleet at Dartmouth, and served in the West Indies in 1662. He was slain in a naval engagement with the Dutch, June 23d, 1665, while in command of the "Old James," a war ship at that time considered a marvel for size and strength.

⁴⁷⁶ Jerome Weston, second Earl of Portland, succeeded his father, Richard, the first Earl, as Captain and Governor of the Isle of Wight. Being supposed loyal to the King, he was displaced from official position by Parliament, and suffered many indignities; but lived to see the King restored, dying shortly after that event, May 16th, 1662.

⁴⁷⁷ Francis, fourteenth Lord Dacre. He supported the Protectorate; but at the last, favored the restoration of the Stuarts, and so came into favor with royalty. He died in 1662.

⁴⁷⁸ George, fourteenth Lord Berkeley, created Baron Mowbray and Earl of Berkeley, September 11th, 1679. He died October 14th, 1698.

⁴⁷⁹ Robert Boyle was the seventh son and fourteenth child of Richard Boyle, Earl of Cork, who was so noted in his day. He was born January 25th, 1627, and soon achieved a reputation for literary and scientific attainments, especially for his invention of the air-pump. He

loughbie,⁴⁸⁰ S^r Peter Leere,⁴⁸¹ S^r John Mennes,⁴⁸² S^r John Colliton,⁴⁸³ Coll. Venables,⁴⁸⁴ M^r Pym,⁴⁸⁵ M^r Povey,⁴⁸⁶ M^r Glascock,⁴⁸⁷ M^r Kendall⁴⁸⁸ and Coll Middleton,⁴⁸⁹ or any three

of

He was also interested in religious affairs, and was made by order of the Council at Whitehall, February 7th, 1662, Governor of the Company for Propagating the Gospel in New England and parts adjacent in America. His life was an active one, as may be seen from his literary remains, which have been published in five volumes. He died December 30th, 1691.

⁴⁸⁰ Sir Francis, fourth Lord Wiloughby of Parham, was a man noted for activity and enterprise, as well as for his loyalty to the Crown. For his distinguished services to the exiled Charles he was sent, soon after the Restoration, as Royal Governor to the West Indies, where he was granted large colonial possessions. His career in this new field of activity, however, was brief, as he lost his life by drowning, at Barbadoes, in 1666.

⁴⁸¹ Sir Peter Leere, though one of the Council for Foreign Plantations, did not sufficiently distinguish himself to leave important memorials behind; nor is it clear how he obtained his title, since his name is not borne on any of the published rolls of knighthood.

⁴⁸² Sir John Mennes, born at Sandwich in 1598, and knighted at Dover in 1641, was Vice-Admiral of the Royal Navy and Governor of Dover Castle. He was the author of *Musarum Deliciae*, published in 1656, and of other works. He died in 1671.

⁴⁸³ Sir John Colleton was a captain of foot in the Civil War, and during the Protectorate was obliged to live in exile. Having received a commission to raise a regiment for the King's service, he expended £40,000 in gathering and equipping it, by which liberality,

and the loss of property by sequestration, he was nearly impoverished. After the Restoration, Charles II. made him some amends for his losses by granting him possessions in America with Albemarle. He was created a Baronet, February 18th, 1660, and died at the age of fifty-eight, in 1666.

⁴⁸⁴ Colonel Robert Venables was an officer in Cromwell's army, and served as chief in command of the forces in Ulster in 1649. He was a friend of Izaak Walton, and author of the third part of the *Universal Angler*, published in 1668.

⁴⁸⁵ Charles Pym, Esq., of Brymore, as his title indicates, belonged to the legal profession, and was a firm loyalist. For his distinguished ability and services to the Crown, he was knighted at Whitehall by the King, February 14th, 1662.

⁴⁸⁶ Thomas Povey had held office under the Protectorate, and was a member of Parliament at this time. He was prominent in affairs after the Restoration. Among the offices held by him was that of Treasurer to the Board of Commissioners for the affairs of Tangier, and Surveyor-General of the Victualling Department. His letter-books, which are of great historic value, have been preserved, and are in the British Museum.

⁴⁸⁷ William Glascock, of Wormley, who is here mentioned as one of the Council for Foreign Plantations, was one of the Masters in Chancery during the reign of Charles II. For his learning and ability he won the title of LL.D., and became Sir William Glascock on the 12th of May, 1661.

⁴⁸⁸ Thomas Kendall was a noted merchant

of them be appointed a Committee to consider of the same and of the severall Patents concerning the Province of Mayne in New-England and to receive all examinacons & testimonies concerning the severall rights thereunto belonging and report the same together with their opinions to this Counsell on Monday next. The said Committee in the meane time to mee (for the purpose aforesaid) at the Inner Court of Wards on Friday next at nyne of the clock in the morning and to adjourne as they shall see cause.

Eodem die.

This Counsell adjourne till this day sevenight at three of the clock in the afternoone in the Inner Court of Wards.

Veneris xvii^o die Maij.

M^r Pym, S^r John Colliton and M^r Kendall (who wth many others were by order of this Counsell made on Monday last appointed a Committee to consider of M^r Gorges Peticon) this day meeting according to the said order and not haveing time sufficient adjourned untill Monday next at two of the clock in the afternoone in the Inner Court of Wards.

Lunæ xx^o die Maij Anno xiiij^o Re Caroli scđi:

M^r BOYLE.

M^r PYM.

M^r POVEY.

COLL MIDDLETON.

M^r HOW.⁴⁹⁰

M^r DIGGES.⁴⁹¹

M^r IEFFERIES.⁴⁹²

The

merchant of his time, and one of the early adventurers to the West Indies, where he held the office of Governor at an early date.

⁴⁸⁹ John Middleton was a General in the Parliamentary army, but changed

his coat and took part on the royal side at the battle of Worcester. For this service to his cause, Charles II. created him Earl of Middleton. He died while filling the office of Governor of Tangier, in 1673.

The Committee for that purpose appointed referred their further proceeding upon M^r Gorges Petition till Monday next at two of the clock in the after noone in the Inner Court of Wards.

(The Journal of Council for Plantations, Public Records Office), 1660-1664.

(Colonial Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. XVIII. No. 70.)

COPY OF S^r GEOFRY PALMER'S⁴⁹³ REPORT TO HIS MATIE
ABOUT M^r GORGES AFFAIRE.

MAY IT PLEASE YOUR MOST EXCELLENT MATIE / In obedience to your Royall Command, by the Reference upon the Petition annexed, I have considered thereof, and doe find that S^r Ferdinando Gorges Grandfather to the Petitioner in the 15th yeare of your Ma^{ties} Royall father, obtained a Graunt to him and his Heires, under the great Seale of England, of a certaine part of New England in America,

⁴⁹⁰ Alexander Howe was a merchant of wealth and influence, interested in western commerce and colonization, for which reason he was doubtless selected as a member of this important Council. No memorials of him have been preserved.

⁴⁹¹ Edward Digges was a son of Sir Dudley Digges, a man noted in the reign of Charles I., and Master of the Rolls in 1630. He was a member of the Governor's Council in Virginia in 1654, and engaged at Denbigh, on the James River, in silk culture. At the departure of Governor Bennett from Virginia, the next year, he became his

successor. He returned to England in 1656, where he for some time represented the interests of the Colony. He died March 15th, 1675.

⁴⁹² John Jefferies was one of an influential coterie of merchants to which Howe and Kendall belonged, engaged in foreign commerce, and who exercised no inconsiderable power at this period, both at home and abroad, as references to them abundantly show; yet one seeks in vain for particulars concerning them.

⁴⁹³ Geoffrey Palmer was Attorney-General and Chief Justice of Chester, and was created a Baronet, June 7th, 1660. He died in 1670.

America, called by the Name of the Province of Mayne, to be held as of the Mannour of East Greenwich, under certaine Rents and Conditions in the Letters Pattents expressed, And it appeares by severall Affidavits and Certificates of credible persons hereunto annexed, that the said S^r Ferdinando Gorges had the posession of the said Province without any disturbance and did governe the same according to the direction of the said Letters Pattents for some yeares, Expended about twenty thousand pounds in the Plantation thereof, that when he had made such a Progresse in y^e said Plantation, as that he expe&ted to reape some Profitt and advantage thereby, the unhappy Warres breaking out in England S^r Ferdinando Gorges was in actuall service in the said Warres for your Royall father, by reason whereof he was a great sufferer, plundered and imprisoned severall times, and thereby disabled from any further Expence, in carrying on the said Plantation, the rather for that he was so disincouraged and discountenanced by the then pretended Commiss^{rs} for forreigne Plantations, that his Commiss^{rs} were forced to come from the said Plantation, and so lost the posession, And the inhabitants thereof Petitioned the Governours of the Matachuset or Bay of Boston, to take them under their Goverment, which accordingly they did, and haue continued under their Governement ever since, And the Petitioners Commiss^{rs}, since your Ma^{tie}s Restoration, haue endeavoured to take posession of the said Province, for the Petitioner being Heire to his Grandfather, and proclaimed your Ma^{tie}, began to hold Courts as formerly, and to administer the Oath of Allegiance and Supremacy, but were disturbed and hindred therein, by the said Governours of the

the Matachuset, and Bay of Boston, who required the Commiss^{rs} to proceed no further on the behalfe of the Petitioner, untill they had Order from the Supreame Authority of England, and untill which time, they commanded the Inhabitants of that Province to continue under their Governement. All which I humbly certify &c.

G. PALMER.

8 June 1664.

Compared with a true Copy that was Examined by Michael Brighouse. End:
Copy of S^r Geoffry Palmers Report.

(Colonial Papers, Vol. XVIII. No. 72.)

THE KING TO THE INHABITANTS OF THE PROVINCE OF
MAINE.

CHARLES R^e

To the Inhabit^{ts} of Mayne
concerning Mr Gorges title.

TRUSTY AND WELBELOVED Wee greet you well. Whereas our Trusty and Welbeloved Ferdinando Gorges Esq^r hath by his humble Petition informed Vs that his Grandfather Sir Ferdinando Gorges Kn^t deceased being a person who laid himself forth very much for the advancing of foraine Plantacons, and particularly that of New England in America, did in the fifteenth year of the Reigne of Our late Royall Father of bleffed memory obtain a Grant under the great Seale of England for a certain part and portion of the said Country which by the said Patent was entitled the Province of Meyne, and (as the Petition^r affirms he hath heard from severall persons of worth) he the said Sir Ferdinando

dinando Gorges, did expend in Planting severall parts of New England above Twenty Thousand pounds Ster' and when he was in hopes to receiue some advantage in recompence of his great disbursements afore men̄coned, the late unhappy Wars breaking out in England, he the said Sir Ferdinando Gorges (though betwixt three & four score years of age) did personally engage in Our Royall Father's service, and particularly in the Siege of Bristol; by reason whereof when it was necessary for him to appear before the Councill & Committees for foraine Plantacons, he was wholly discountenanced by them, even to the encouraging of the people in the said Province to disown his government, which had continued for severall years uninterrupted, and a party of the Inhabitants of the said Province petīconing the Gouernor of the Masachusets Bay, That they would also take upon them the Gouernment of the said Province; In Purfiance of that Petīcon those who had the Gouernment of the said Bay did from thence forth take upon them the Government of the said Province; So as both the said Sir Ferdinando the Petīconers Father and himself haue ever since been thereby deprived of the issues and profits of the said Province, Now in regard of the Premisses and forasmuch as those Agents who were lately employed to addresse themselues unto Vs on the behalfe of the Gouernors and Inhabitants of the said Bay being on the behalfe of the Petīconer charged before. Our Privy Councill for usurping the government of the said Province did declare, that those whom they represented did not claime any title to or interest in the said Province but did onely governe the same, untill Orders from hence were sent over for the government thereof

thereof on the behalf of the Petiſoner upon whose humble
ſupplicaſons, Wee were graciously pleased to referre the
Allegaſons aboue ſaid to the confideraſon and examinaſon
of Our Councell learned in the Law, who haue made report
unto Vs, that they have conſidered thereof and do find that
Sir Ferdinando Gorges aforemenconed in the fifteenth year
of the Reigne of Our Royall Father obtained a Grant to
him and his Heirs under the great Seale of England of a
part of New England in America, called by the name of
the Province of Meyne, to be held as of the Mannor of
East Greenwich, under certain Rents and condiſons in the
Letters Ptñts exprefſed, And that it appeared by fevall
Affidavits & Certificates of credible perſons that the ſaid Sir
Ferdinando Gorges had the poſſeſſion of the ſaid Province
without any disturbance, and did govern the ſame, according
to the direcſions of the ſaid Lres Ptñts, for ſome years, ex-
pended aboue Twenty Thousand pounds in the Plantaſon
thereof That when he had made Such progreſſe in the ſaid
Plantaſon as that he expected to reap ſome profit and ad-
vantage thereby, the unhappy Wars breaking out in Eng-
land; Sir Ferdinando Gorges was in actuall ſervice in the
ſaid Wars for Our Royall Father, by reaſon whereof he was
a great Sufferer, plundred and imprifoned fevall times,
and thereby diſabled from any further expences in carrying
on the ſaid Plantaſon; the rather for that he was ſo diſ-
couraged and diſcountenanced by the then pretended Co-
miſſioners for foraine Plantaſons as that his Comiſſioners
were forced to come from the ſaid Plantaſon, and ſo loſt
the poſſeſſion; and the Inhabitants thereof petiſoned the
Gouernors of the Maſachusetts or Bay of Boston to take
them

them under their Government which accordingly they did and haue continued under their government ever since, And the Petiſoners Comiſſioners ſince Our Reſtoraſon haue endeauoured to take poſfeſſion of the ſaid Province for the Petiſoner (being Heir to his Grandfather) and Proclaimed Vs, began to hold Courts as formerly, to administer the Oaths of Allegiance and Supremacy, but were diſturbed and hindred therein by the ſaid Governors of the Maſaſuſets or the Bay of Boston: who required the Co‐miſſioners to proceed no further on the behalf of the Petiſoner untiſl they had Order from the Supreme Authority of England, untiſl which time they co‐maanded the Inhabitants of that Province to continue under their Government; Wee haue taken the whole matter into o‐r Princeley co‐ſideraſon; and finding the Petiſoners Allegaſons and Report of Our ſaid Councill learned ſo confor‐mant, Wee haue thought fit to ſignify Our pleasure on the behalfe of the ſaid Ferdinand Gorges the Petiſoner, hereby Requiring you that you forth‐with make Reſtituſon of the ſaid Province unto him o‐r his Co‐miſſioners, and deliver him o‐r them the quiet & peaceable Poſfeſſion thereof, *otherwise that without delay you ſhow Vs reaſon to the contrary.* And ſo Wee bid you farewell. Given at Our Court at Whitehall the 11th day of Iune 1664 in the Sixteenth year of Our Reigne.

By his Ma‐ties co‐maand /

WILL: MORICE.⁴⁹⁴

To

⁴⁹⁴ Sir William Morice was born at Exeter, November 6th, 1602, and in 1645 was chosen knight of the shire for Devon, to ſerve in the Long Parliament. By the influence of General Monk, his kinsman, he was made Secretary of

State by Charles II., in February, 1659, and in 1660, upon the King's landing in England, received the honor of knighthood. In 1661 he was M. P. for Plymouth. He died December 12th, 1676.

To Our Trusty & Welbeloued the Inhabitants of the Province of Meyne in New England or whom else it may concerne.

This is a true Copy, examined by Jo: COOKE.

End: 11 June 1664. New England. Letter of his Ma^{tie} restoring possession.

(Colonial Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. XIX. No. 2.)

ANSWER OF THE GENERAL COURT OF THE MASSACHUSETTS
TO A PETITION BY FERDINANDO GORGES, 1665.

AN Answer by letter from the General Court of y^e Mafachufets Colony in New England, upon their Receipt of y^e Copie of a Petition of Ferdinando Gorges, and several others of the Province of Mayne & Laconia, to the Petition complaining of them for seizing their Lands, & subverting their antient Government, They refusing to take the Engagem^t to bee true to y^e Common Wealth wthout King & House of Lords. Whereas they the Petitioners, had in obedience to Acts of Parliam^t one thousand six hundred forty-eight, as they call them, taken it, and advised the Honorable State of it. &c^a

At our first coming hither into this Wildernes, and for some years after, multitude of occasions, in the begining of soe great an undertaking, did hinder our exact taking notice of, or laying claime to the utmost extent of our Limits, especialy to the Northward; nor had Wee, for some time after our coming hither occasion to make use thereof, yet did

did We never set up our Bounds three miles east of Merrimack, as the Petition mentioneth. But, as occasion was given, haue alwayes asserted the same Limits, that now Wee claime, thô Wee knew not certainly, till Tryal made, where it would fall.

In the meane time several Persons procured Patents of certaine Tracts of Land wthin the Limits formerly granted us. Whence it came to passe that there were several little Governments, sometimes by Patents, sometimes by Combination, sometimes the People left in distraction and Confusion, without any ; and in great danger and hazard of shedding one another's blood.

Whereupon, first divers of the Inhabitants of Pascattqua petitioned this Court, that as they were conceiued to bee within the Line ; soe they might bee actualy taken in and Govern'd by us, w^{ch} accordingly was done, by Commissioners sent from this Court, with y^e general consent & good liking of all the Inhabitants, & persons interested therein, and soe wee haue continued in Peace, and enjoying the fruit and benefit of good Government to this day.

After wee tooke a more exact survey of our Limits and finding those easterly Parts mentioned in y^e Petition to fall within our Patent, w^{ch} is more antient & more authentic, than any other pretended unto by y^e Petitioners, Wee made Declaration thereof to the Inhabitants residing within the aforesaid Precincts, being likewise petitioned soe to doe, by divers of the Inhabitants of Pasquataqua (a River now called Yorkshier) and after some agitation, and conferrence with the rest of the People there, wee came to a friendly & amicable Conclusion, that as they were within our Patent soe
they

they would for ever bee subiect to our Government, wherein they were well satisfied, and find the benefit thereof, as their Petition to his Royal Highness doth Declare.

Nor was it matter of profit that moved us hereunto, for wee haue neither receiued, nor expected any thereby. But the Obligation of Duty that lieth upon us, to see the People within Our Patent govern'd according to God, and hath bin Our diligent care & endeavour, and soe shall allwayes bee, That all just posseſſions and empowerments ſhalbe preſerued & Confirmed to y^e true Proprietors here, as it is amongſt the rest of the Inhabitants, that haue been under our Government from the Begining.

There are ſeveral ſcatterd Inhabitants that liue more eaſterly, obſerving the benefit their Neighbours haue reaped by good Governm^t, haue offerd themſelves to us, w^{ch} yet wee are ſlow to accept of, because wthout our Limits, w^{ch} wee deſire not to enlarge.

It is noe ſtrange thing that M^r Winthrope, M^r Dudley &c^a ſhould long ſince, before our Limits were exaſtly known, feeme to own thoſe for diſtinct Governm^{ts} w^{ch} in truth were none, but included in thiſ of ours, as upon the running of our Line did maniſtely appeare.

Upon complaints relating to y^e Bounds & Limits of the Patent of y^e Maſſachufets, I humbly deſire on their behalf, that they may haue notice thereof, & liberty to anſwer for themſelves, before any determination bee made in the caſe, w^{ch} being done, I doubt not but they will acquiesce in ſuſh concluſion as by the Kings' moſt Excellent Majestie, or any ſubſtituted thereto by him, ſhall make in the Caſe.

(Egerton MS., British Museum, No. 2395, Fol. 497.)

DRAUGHT OF A LET^R FROM HIS MAT^E TO THE CORPORATION
OF BOSTON IN NEW ENGLAND.DEC^R 18, 1674.

TRUSTID AND WELLBELOVED wee Greet you well whereas
Ferdinando Gorge and Robert Mason Esq^{rs} haue humbly
repräsenteted to us by their Petitions and Complaints that by
severall Letters Patents from our Royall Predecessors, They
have a Legall Right in their Provinces of Mayne and of
Hampshire wherein they have exercised all Jurisdictions as
amply and unquestionably as any other Province in New
England hath at any time don neare 30 years untill in the
yeare 1652 They were disturbed by force and a pretended
authoritie derived from you: in the heighth of the late
civill wars, and Rebellion in England and other our Do-
minions and that Since our return to the exercise of our
Kingly office, the said pretences and Disturbances are not
yet fully removed, to the Interruption of their proprietie
and the public peace of those Provinces upon noe other
Judgment or Determination then the arbitrarie resolutions
and appointments of y^e Govern^r and Councell, influenced
by Advices from hence thereby judging our Letters Patents
and vacating them, and Disseizing, and taking posseſſion of
the Governments estates and Inheritances of our Good
Subjects, The said Petitioners have thereforeAppealed to
our Soveraigne Authoritie and humbly besought us to
graunt unto them our Royall Protection: and to examine,
adjudge and determine the matters in difference between
them and your Corporation, And prevent thereby the more
dangerous

dangerous Remedies provided in his Ma^{ties} Graunts for the Relief and Redrefs of the Provinces when they shall find themselves injured and Oppressed, Wee therefore taking into our princely Consideration the Petition and Complaints of the said Ferdinando Gorge: and Rob Mason and the generall Peace and welfare of New England (which Colonie by the Good blessing of God is improved and grown upp to bee a Greate people and a Considerable part of our foreigne Dominions; having bin perticularly taken care of and affisted in its Infancie by our Royall predecessor, and many of the principall Nobilitie, Gentrie and others of this Nation, and the bountifull Contributions, and greate expences from hence) have thought fitt to nominat and appoint A B and C to bee Comiss^{rs} from us to enquire into the state of affaires in our said Colonie, and of the severall Provinces, Jurisdic^{tions} Rights and Governm^{ts} relating thereunto; and to endevour as much as in them lyes to accomodat and reconcile all such matters, Differences and Complaints as shall appeare before them, either in relation to Bounds or other Pretensions betweene you and the said ferdinando Gorge and Robert Mason ; or any other publick Difference, wherein the Peace Quiet and good Governmt of our good People in New England shall bee concerned And because wee are desirous that noe delaie bee given to soe good a work, wee have required the said A B and C to emploie noe farther time then 2 months in their endevour of reconciling and setling of all matters in difference as above said And that if any such difficulty shall arise, soe that the said matter cannot sufficiently bee accomodated and determined upon the place within that time but that it

it will be necessarie they should bee brought before us to bee heard and determined by us. We doe hereby appoint and require you fourthwith to elect some discreet person or persons to bee throughly and sufficently instructed and empowred by you to represent you heere and that in the meanwhile noe Act of Force or Violence bee exercised by you as wee shall strictly forbidd it in all others deriving any authoritie from us or our Royall Predecessors in New England, upon any pretence whatsoe-ever untill wee upon a full hearing and due Consideration of what shall bee offered by all parties, as well by such as are Concerned as by our Comissioners upon their enquirie and Examination in differently representing the state of affaires in New England, shall give our Royall Judgment and Determination according to Justice and Equitie. It resting solely in our Soveraigne Authoritie to Judge of, and provide for the Peace Safetie and Comon Protection of all our Colonies and Plantations.

A Draught of his Ma^{ties} pleasure to be signified upon the Petition of Ferdinando Gorge and Robert Mason.

His Ma^{tie} taking into his princely consideration the humble Petition of Ferdinando Gorge and Robert Mason, and being desirous to provide for the Peace and Union of the Severall Provinces of New England, as well as to doe right to the Petition^{rs}; is graciously pleased to appoint Comiss^{rs} to repaire fourthwith thither with instrutions to informe themselves of the differences expressed in the said Petition and to endevour the accomodating, and reconciling them, and to return after 2 months staye there. And his Ma^{tie} is further pleased to appoint that if any such difficulties shall arise

arise there as shall hinder the effecting thereof to require the Parties disagreeing to elect some discreet person or persons to bee throughly and sufficiently impowred and instructed by them to represent them to his Ma^{tie} heere, as their Agents, that his Ma^{tie} may upon full hearing give his Royall Judgment and Determination according to Justice and Equitie, and the Petitioners are to take notice hereof that they may by them selves or some deputed by them, attend his Ma^{ties} Co^missioners at theire Arrivall in New England there to make good theire Petition and Complaint.

(Additional Manuscripts, British Museum, 28089, fol. 1.)

THE PROPOSALS OF FERDINANDO GORGES E^{SQR}. FOR THE
SALE OF THE PROVINCE OF MAINE IN NEW ENGLAND
TO HIS MAJESTYE.

THAT his Maj^{ty} doe pay presently upon the agreem^t the sume of One thoufand pounds. That when his Maj^{ty} shalbe in posseſſion of the ſaid province, then his Maj^{ty} to pay him tenne thoufand pounds more by equall paym^{ts} of two thoufand pounds a yeaſe and to be paid within five yeaſes after his Maj^{ts} ſaid posſeſſion.

That vpon the conveying of the ſaid province to his Maj^{ty} ſuch ſecurity shalbe given for the payment of the ſaid Tenne thoufands as ſhalbe aduised by Councill.

FERDINANDO GORGES.

24 february 167⁵.

End : M^t Gorges proposall ab^t his Land in New England.

(New

(New England Board of Trade Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. VI. B. B. 26.)

To the Queenes most Excellent Maj^{tie} and the R^t Hono^{ble};
the Lords of their Ma^{ts} most Hono^{ble} Privy Councell.

The Case and Peti^con of Ferdinando Gorge Esq^r /
Humbly Sheweth,

That King Charles the first (of blessed memory) by his Letters Patents under the Great Seale of England, bearing date the third day of April in the 15th yeare of his Reigne, Did Give Grant and Confirme unto S^r Ferdinando Gorge Knight his heires and Affignes for ever, the propriety and Government of all that Countrey called the Province of Maine in New England, lying betweene the River of Kennibbeck Eastward, and Piscattaway Westward, containing one hundred and twenty miles, with divers great priviledges, Royalties, and Jurisdic^{tions} therein mentioned and contained, as by the said Letters Patents (Relation being thereunto had) doth fully and at large appeare. And the said S^r Ferdinando Gorge being so feized as aforesaid, did lay out and expend twenty thousand pounds at the least for the better Improvement of the said Province of Maine, And in defending his said Ma^{ts} Right against the powerful opposition he met with from the French Ambassador. Residing at London, who then laid Claime to that Countrey in the behalfe of the King his Master, and the French in Canada and Accadie, which was the occasion of great trouble and expence, After whose death it legally descended and came by Right of Inheritance to Ferdinando Gorge Esq^r Grandson and heir to the said S^r Ferdinando, Whereupon John Archdale

Archdale Esq^r being Authorized by the said Ferdinando, and at his Request, did pass the Seas for New England, and likewise had a due Commission from his late Ma^{tie} King Charles the second for that purpose, and was Resident upon the said Province of Maine for the space of one yeare or thereabouts, But the Bostoners or Colony of Massachusets notwithstanding rebelliously vi et armis opposed and withstood his said late Ma^{ts} Comands and Authority, And likewise opposed the said John Archdale in the Execucon of his said Commission by pretending a Right, and laying a Claim to the Chief part of the said Province, whereof his said late Ma^{tie} was fully informed and satisfied, Whereupon the said Ferdinando was Compelled to defend his Legal Right to the said province ag^t the unjust dealing and oppositions of the said Bostoners, And several persons were sent over to England by the Colony of Massachusets, who were Encouraged and supported by a publick Charge or Tax made at Boston and elsewhere on that behalfe, and several Hearings were had on both sides before his said late Ma^{tie} in Councel, and about ten years Contest at Law, before they could have a full and Conclusifve Determination of the matter in Controversy, which did occasion vast Charges, and almost the undoing of the said Ferdinando his Estate and family, And upon a full and long Debate by learned Councel on both sides, his said late Ma^{tie} at Councel Board was then and there graciously pleased to declare that the said Province, did of Right belong to the said Ferdinando, and accordingly it was Confirmed unto and reinvested upon him, After which the said Ferdinando did humbly offer the said province to his said late Ma^{tie} for a reasonable Consideracon.

as

as belonging Originally of Right to the Crowne, But his Ma^{tie} did not accept thereof, by reason of the then weighty and publick Affaires at home, But granted him to dispose thereof as he thought convenient, Whereupon he was forced by reason of his great extremity to sell the same to one Usher of Boston for an inconsiderable summe, who afterwards sold the same to the Colony of the Massachusets. Soon after which his late Ma^{tie} King Charles the Second Orderd a Quo Warranto against the said Corporation of the Massachusets, and by a Legal Sentence made voyd their Charter.

The premises confidered, and also in Consideraçon of the great Charges and losſ that the said Ferdinando hath sustaineſt in this matter against the unjust Dealings of the said Bostoners or Massachusets, And the said Corporaçon being now Dissolved, and become Forfeited And divers of the most Eminent Lawyers in England having given it under their hands, That upon the Dissolution of the Charter of the Massachusets, the Lands purchased by them of the said Ferdinando Gorge, Returne and remaine in the said Ferdinando Gorge, whom they had Diffeized, and not either to the said James Usher, or any other. Your Pet^r understanding divers of the Colony of the Massachusets seeking for a new Charter from their Ma^{ties} have Inferted therein the Province of Maine, whereunto your Pet^r apprehends himselfe legally entitled.

Your Pet^r doth therefore humbly Pray That his Inheritance may not be given away unto the Bostoners or Massachuet Colony, but that he may be permitted to maintaine his Right at Law, (if Questioned) he having ſent persons to take poſſeſſion thereof, or (which he rather

rather desires) That her Ma^{tie} and this Hono^{ble} Board will Condescend to hear his Case, and whatsoever shall be at this Hono^{ble} Board determined, your pet^t will Cheerfully submit unto, your pet^t having found by sad experience how unable he is to Cope at Law with a numerous and opulent Corporation.

And your Pet^t shall ever pray, &c.

FERDINANDO GORGES.

End: Ferdinando Gorge Esq^r Reced 9 July 1691.

(New England Board of Trade Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. V. p. 522.)

SUMONS TO M^E ALLEN,⁴⁹⁵ M^R GORGES &c. TO BE HEARD
THE 13TH JULY.

THE Right Hon^{ble} the Lords of the Committee of trade and Plantations having by their Ma's Order under Consideration the Draught of a Charter for y^e Colony of the Massachusetts Bay in New England have appointed to meet at the Councill Chamber [at Whitehall] on Monday the 13th of this

⁴⁹⁵ Samuel Allen was a London merchant, and father-in-law to John Usher. He purchased the title to the Province of New Hampshire of the heirs of John Mason, April 27th, 1691, and removed from London to New England in 1698, when he assumed the office of Governor of New Hampshire; his son-in-law Usher being his Lieutenant-Governor. From the time he arrived in the Province until his death, which occurred May 5th, 1705, he was in constant litigation with other claimants for

the posseesion of the territory conveyed to him by the Mason heirs. He is spoken of as an honorable merchant and an exemplary Christian. For further particulars concerning him, reference may be had to the *Provincial Records of New Hampshire*, Vol. II. pp. 514-562; *The History of New Hampshire*, by Jeremy Belknap, A. M., Philadelphia, 1784, pp. 301-328; *Annals of Portsmouth*, by Nathaniel Adams, Portsmouth, 1825, pp. 94, 121.

this Inst^t July at 5 of y^e clock in the afternoon when their lo^rs will hear M^r Sau^l Allen and M^r Ferdinando Gorges and such others as may be Concerned in the settlem^t of the Boundaries of that Colony of which you are to give Notice to M^r Allen and M^r Gorges and such others as may be concerned therein.

To the Messenger attending the Committee of Trade and Plantations.

End: 9 July 1691. Summons to M^r Allen, M^r Gorges &c to be heard the 13th July.

(New England Board of Trade Papers, Public Records Office, Vol. V. p. 524.)

REFERENCE OF MY LORD GORGES PETITION CONCERNING
THE MASSACHUSETS BAY.

AT the Court at Whitehall the 30th of July 1691
Present

The Queens most Excellent Ma^{ry} in Councill.

Upon reading the Petition of the R^t Hono^{ble} Richard Lord Gorges Baron of Dundalk in the Kingdome of Ireland, concerning his Title to the County of Massachusets and other Territorys in New England in America, Humbly praying Her Ma^{ry} not to make any Grant thereof untill his Lo^{pp} be first heard therein, as in the Petition annexed is more at large sett forth. It is this day ordered by Her Ma^{ry} in Councill That it be, and it is hereby Referrd to the R^t Hono^{ble} the Lords of the Committee of Trade and Plantations, to examine the matter of the said Petition, and thereupon

thereupon to Report to this Board what Their Lo^{pps}s conceive fit to be done therein.

WILLIAM BLATHWAYT.⁴⁹⁶

(New England Board of Trade Papers, Public Records Office, Vol.VI. B. A. p. 24.)

PETICÔN OF FERDINANDO GORGE ESQ.

To the R^t Hon^{ble} the Lords of their Ma^{ties} most Hono^{ble}: Privy Council, Committee for Forreigne Plantations.

The humble Peticôن of Ferdinando Gorges Esq^r son and heir of John Gorges Esq^r deceas^d: who was son and heir of S^r Ferdinando Gorges Kn^t long since dec^d

Sheweth

That S^r Ferdinando Gorges your Pet^{rs} said Grandfather, was for many years one of the Principal persons in this Nation, who for many years spent a great deale of his time, and very much Impaired his Estate in sending over persons for, and in the planting of several parts of New England, and obtained for himselfe and Robert Gorges his son from the Crowne, and from the R^t Hon^{ble} the then Council for the Affairs of New England, called the Plymouth Council, several Grants of great and considerable Traëts

⁴⁹⁶ William Blathwait, Esq., of London, whose name so frequently appears in connection with New England, is thus spoken of by Evelyn, under date of June 18th, 1687: "I dined at Mr. Blathwaite's (two miles from Hampton). This gentleman is Secretary of War, Clerk of the Council, &c., having raised himself by his industry from very moderate circumstances. He is a very

proper, handsome person, and very dexterous in busines; and besides all this, has married a great fortune. His income by the Army, Council, and Secretary to the Committee of Foreign Plantations, brings him in above £2,000 per annum." He was Parliamentary represtative from Bath from 1690 until 1710. He died, August, 1717, full of years and honors.

Tracts of Land in New England aforesaid, But the Governours and Councel of Boston in New England, growing in Wealth, power and Interest, made it their constant practise, ever since the death of his said Grandfather, to oppress the father, and your Pet^r and to take from them, and render of no value the Lands in New England, to which your Pet^r is lawfully entituled.

And your Pet^r above twenty years since, sent over one M^r John Archdale, with lawful authority to Act as Governo^r of that part of your pet^rs Estate in New England aforesaid, called the province of Mayne, who began to make some Settlement of the People then there Residing, And there being a Councel sitting about the Affaire of the Province, the Governo^r and Councel of New England, sent a Party of men in Armes, and by force took possession of the said Province.

Of which violent and unlawfull Proceedings Complaint being made to King Charles the 2^d (of blessed memory) several Hearings were obtained here, during his Reigne, both at Councel Board, and the Com^{tee} of Planta^cons, where your Pet^rs Right as to the said province of Maine, was plainly made appear.

And after the Expence of a great deale of time and money, your Pet^r being of a straitned Fortune And being confident that the said Governo^r and Company of the Mafachusets, would still perplex and weary out your pet^r He was prevailed withall to Accept of the Sum^e of 1500^l or thereabouts, and for that small Considera^con to Convey his Interest in the said province of Mayne, to M^r James Usher their Agent, who as your Pet^r is credibly informed Conveyd
the

the same, to the Governo^r, Council, or Trustees of the said Massachuset Colony.

Now forasmuch as since the making of the said Conveyance, as your Pet^t is informed the Right of the said Massachusets Colony is become forfeited to his late Ma^{tie}. And that the Agents of the said Colony are before this Hon^{ble} Council prosecuting for a new Charter both for the said Colony of the Massachusets, & the said province of Maine, And your Pet^t being also informed by Council learned in the Law, that he is by vertue of the said forfeiture lawfully entituled both to the said province & other his Estate thereto adjoyning.

Your Pet^t humbly Prays That before any such New Charter be Granted, your Pet^t may be heard by his Council, and have convenient time given him to send for Witnesses to make proof of the matters and things herein suggested, and to make out his Title to that part of the Colony of the Massachusets Granted by the Council of Plymouth, to your Pet^s uncle Robert Gorges, containing ten miles in front in the Bay of the Massachusets, and thirty miles deep into the Main Land, As also Liberty to Inspect the Books and Records of Proceedings of the said Council of Plymouth, by whom all Conveyances of Lands in New England were made, your Pet^t having lost many Deeds and papers which have upon several occasions been made use of at Council Table & Com^{tee} for plantations.

And your Pet^t shall ever Pray &c.

[FERDINANDO GORGES.]

July 30, 1691.

THE LETTERS
OF
SIR FERDINANDO GORGES,

COVERING THE PERIOD FROM 1595 TO 1646.



THE LETTERS
OF
SIR FERDINANDO GORGES,
COVERING THE PERIOD FROM 1595 TO 1646.

(Cecil Papers 171/149.)

SIR F. GORGES TO THE EARL OF ESSEX.⁴⁹⁷

MY MOST HONARABL

By your Lordshipes Comaunde I mak my sellfe bould to troubell your Lordshipe wth thes feue lines, by the which I do houmblly beseech your honor, ernestly to perswad my Lo. Burgh, to continew his determynasion, and promyse, unto your Lordship, for the removinge his Leeftenant governor: whos youseghe, and follesh maner, hath binn so proud, and scornefull touerde me, as all most I ame Ashamed to be the reporter of it my sellfe.

Sense

⁴⁹⁷ Robert Devereaux, Earl of Effex, was the son of Walter Devereaux and Lettice Knollys, and stepson of that wicked favorite of Elizabeth, the Earl of Leicester, who was supposed to have poisoned the elder Devereaux. Owing to rare personal gifts, the young Earl

attracted the Queen, and by her favor rapidly rose to eminence; but by godles ambition, vanity, and rashnesf forfeited her esteem, and was brought to the block, February 25th, 1601, at the age of thirty-three, on the charge of instigating a rebellion.

Sense my last cominge over, he hath thretned me unto my faze, that he woulld call me unto a corte, to aunfoweare (as he termith it), my runinge from my garrison wth out horder from the Goverment; now my good Lord wer this treu, it wer sufficient to call in question my life, as weell as the losinge of my Company, and reputasian, but this beinge false, as my Lo: Burgh can assure your Lo. it is: I do humbly and most Ernestly intret your honor at souch time as he shall mak his Complaint unto your Lordshipe for so I perseve by his thretes he doth in tende, for any refusinge to com unto has Corte to aunswer to any souch thinge, that your Lordship will, out of your ho. favoure towerds me: and the untruth of his acusation; mak him to knowe what it is so publikly, and so fallfly, to call in question the life, and reputasian of any gentellman, this do I the rather presoum to wrght unto your Lo: for that by your honarabl fafour I have receved, the gretest part of my repitasion, and that thes wronge hath bin rather offred unto me, by the previlidge of his authority rather than of any Corage or a bility in the man to mak that good he hath follfly fugiested: humbly cravenge pardon of your Lo: for my boulld requestes, the which I take in resoun and defense of my ound reputasian I am bound to do and that makes me once agayne most Earnestly to intrete your hon: wth ussing your Lo: powre in this my just defense, and discountinanc tourdes him, the which willbe a menes so mouch the rathour to mak him aknoulege his Error, in that he is perswadid by reson of a litell pellfe he hath by his longe misfarablnes raked to gether, that ther with, he is soffisently abl, both to beffrind & countinanse him selfe, in any mater against
any

any man, as not ondly by his wordes and ronge to me it may aper, but allso by his skornfull manor of deling. wth my Lo. Burgh ho^s fawwer hath bin the ondly menes of all that hee hath, this humbly praiinge to god for the in cres of your honrabl estate, and continuanc of your Lo. hellth I houmblly tak my leve from the Brill th 8 of Iune.

Your Lo: Ever to be Comauinded/ FARD: GORGES.

Holograph. Add. To the Right honarabl and my most singular good Lord the Erell of Effexe yeve thes. End: 8 June 1595 S^r Ferdinando Gorge. 2 pp.

(Cecil Papers 167/55.)

SIR F. GORGES TO THE EARL OF ESSEX.

MOST HO:

Allthoough I canne write unto your Lo: no newes for that ther hath not past any thinge here worthy the trublinge your Lo: wth all, yt for that I desier to many fest my unfained and dutifull servise, the which in my hart and soull, I have vowed to your ho: befor any other whome soumever, I thought it mete under your Lo: Correction, to youse the opportunty of this onest mesenger, whose care & diligence I cane be a wittnes of, whose grefe I finde not to have binne a litell, for that it was his Evell fortuen so unhapily to be lefte be hinde, to write many wordes of him of home your Lo: shall have so good opertunty to make triall of wer more then nedfull, wherfor Coumendinge my humble servis unto your Lo: hartily besichinge the allmighty wth his grase and holy sperite to protec^te and gide you in all your Axcions From plimoth 15 of June.

Your honor to Coumand/ FARD: GORGES.

Holograph. Add: To my most ho: the Erell of Effexe Lo: Genarall of Hur Magestes Army thes. 1 p.

(Cecil

(Cecil Papers 172/31.)

SIR F. GORGES TO THE EARL OF ESSEX.

MOST HONARABL:

My Lorde Bourgh⁴⁹⁸ his most kinde respete unto me & of my repetasian is such as mor I canne not desier, but soo as I perseve it cheffly prosedeth as well from and by your Lo: menes, as of the gouutes of my cause, for the which as for all other your moste honarabl fafours I canne but geve my fellfe as all redey I have don holy to be desposed of by or at your Lo: plesuer Continuinge stille unto your Lo. an houmbel souter, that it may plles your ho: at such time as your Lor: shall have menes to Amende my pore repitasion, by any Imploymen wher in I may be more profitabl unto my Contyrie then here I ame, to remember me, gevenge your Lo: all the Ashouranse of anonest man, ther leves not any that willbe mor desirus, to deserve your most Nobell care then my fellfe.

her is not any fertayne newes mor then I ame perswaded my Lo: Burgh hath writen unto your Lo: of fave as it is reported, Mounte Dragon⁴⁹⁹ is marched wth 7000 men to uerdes our men to see if he canne posibly levey the feche,

or

⁴⁹⁸ William Cecil, Lord Burleigh, was born in 1521, and was a lawyer by profession. He was made secretary to Edward VI., who conferred upon him the honor of knighthood. He also enjoyed the favor of Queen Mary, and from the accession of Elizabeth, in 1558, until the day of his death in 1598, a period of forty years, he shared her confidence, and was the chief stay of her reign. He deservedly stands in the first rank of English statesmen.

⁴⁹⁹ Mondragon was a prince of Spain,

and acquired fame, not only for bravery in the field, but for his formal punctilio in matters of etiquette. Form and ceremony were carried to excess in Spain; but of all the grandes of the Spanish Court, Mondragon excelled in their practice. It is said that he would not rise in the presence of an equal in rank; since by so doing, it might appear that he claimed superiority. On one occasion, great embarrassment is said to have resulted from this custom of the prince.

or at the leste by any menes geve soucoure unto y^e toune
the which is fayed to be in soume disstrefe, in so mouch as
they of nesesity must, if they be not releved, render the plase
wth in verey shorte time. this most humbly cravenge your
Lo: parden for my rudenes I humbly take my leve continua-
uly praiinge for the incres of your honor, and Continuans
of your Lo: hellth, From the Brill the. 16. of July.

Your Lo: most ashourd to comande / FARD: GORGES.

Holograph. Add : To my most ho : & Espesial good Lorde Erell of Effexx thes.
End. S: Ferdinando Gorge 16 July 1595 At y^e Brill.⁵⁰⁰ i p.

(Cecil Papers 39/58.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HON; I dide understand that it had thoroly binne
resoullfed upon that the Comodety of pillchers,⁵⁰¹ the which
doth amounce, as they doo report unto me who hath hade
the delinges in it, not to a bove 200^{ms} or 200^l a yere shoulld
have com to the maintenanse of me and my offefors: but
by

⁵⁰⁰ This town is on the left bank of the river Meuse, a pleasant drive of fourteen miles west from Rotterdam, and is interesting as being the cradle of Dutch liberty. In the year 1585 it was, together with the town of Flushing, ceded to Elizabeth as security for aid furnished the Dutch patriots. These towns were held by the English for thirty-one years, and denominated by them the cautionary towns; but in 1616 were restored to the Dutch by James, who was in sore want of money at the time, upon a partial payment of the debt due England, an act which added much to his unpopularity.

⁵⁰¹ There was perhaps no commodity in the realm which escaped yielding tribute to some favorite of the crown; and it would appear by this letter, that a tax on the pilchard fisheries in the vicinity of Plymouth had been affignd or at least promised to Gorges. Carew, who was at this time preparing his *Survey of Cornwall*, calls the pilchard "the least fish in bigness, greatest for gain, and most in number," of all the fish taken on the Cornish coast. It is of the genus *Clupea*, and resembles the herring, but is somewhat thicker and rounder. It has furnished for centuries an important article of food and commerce

by what menes this is for gotten or other waife resoullfed on I do not knowe: for my oundparte feth I am so far entred in it & that it was hur Magestes plesur to call me unto it, by which menes I have loste a plase of greter comoditi then, for oft I perseve, this is like to be: at what time it allso plesed hur to comand me to relie my sellffe upon hur Grasus plesur: wher for I do not now intende to sete doune any other note for my sellfe then it shall plesse hur out of hur prinsly harte to thinke me worthey of; confidently ashouringe my sellfe upon your ho: fafor tourerds me in furderinge and urgeinge hur Grasus buntyn confiderrasion I may the better be able to discharge my duty in the plase: The nomber of soulders determined of to doo duty canne by no menes be lesened & therfor I have small hope to geve my sellfe any hellpe by that: The offefors that I intended to have maintained by the forsaide menes .ar thes: a Leffttenant an Ainchente⁵⁰² a Sargent on M^r Gonor⁵⁰³ in the forte an other in the Islante whos Entertainementes oulde have amounted to in all som 50⁴ a yere: hur Magestes intente to geve it over for avoydienge of Charge, I canne not hellp, but howe nesesarie it is it shoulld be carfully loked unto. no man will denie: but if ther be a fourder intente, then I will immagen, by the retourne of S^r: Franses Drake⁵⁰⁴ I must plainly protest unto your Lo: home I do so much

merce to the people of southerm Eng-
land, being preferred in large quantities
principally by smoking and pickling, or,
as Carew says, "by fuming, pressing, or
pickling." A rival industry was being
carried on by the Spaniards at Corunna.
Vide Carew's Survey of Cornwall,
London, 1811, pp. 100, 102.

⁵⁰² An ancient was the bearer of the
regimental colors, or as we now say, an
ensign.

⁵⁰³ That is, a master gunner.

⁵⁰⁴ Sir Francis Drake will always
enjoy the honor of having been the first
Englishman who encompassed the globe.
His exploits in the wars with Spain
have

much love & honor and unto home I do aknowlege my sellfe to be so many waife bounde unto: ther canne fall nothinge mor hevey upon me then the burden of that disgrasse. I cannot but have a more connfident hope & ashourans of the strenkth and love of so many of my ho: frindes, which if my Expetasion be deseved I will contente my sellfe wth the menest estate in the worellde. & desier to serve god in cherriyty praiinge for the good of all, and for your Lo: in particulor, unto hom I doo most humbly rec-omend my sellfe craving pardon for my trublinge your Lo: that far: from Plimoth

Your Lo: por kinsman to comande / FARD: GORGES.

28th of March.

Holog. Add: To the Right ho: S^r Robert Siffell Knight And on of hur Magestes hon: previ Counsell this. End: 28 Mar 1596. S^r Ferdinando Gorges to my M: From Plymmothe. *readde*; in Cecil's hand. 1 p.

(State Papers, Domestic Correspondence, Elizabeth, Vol. CCLVII. No. 19.)

SIR F. GORGES TO LORD BURGHLEY.

RIGHT HONORABLE, heare are daylye rumores of th' Enimies intent, to put for theise ptes) to burnne and spoyle theym, at the left as they haue pmised themselves, notwithstandinge I doe not see what course is taken by anye man heare to anye purpose for th' impeachm^t of them, but all men for the moſte pte full of feare & in doubt what to doe; It is also reported by Soīne, that came latelye from the Coaste

have been the theme of historian, ro-
mancer, and poet, and will long continue
to be, though the character of the man
was unenviable; his chief virtue being

a bulldog courage, which was the potent
factor in bearing him to succes. He
died January 28th, 1595.

Coaste that the Gallyes at Bluett,⁵⁰⁵ are in a readines to goe, but it is not knownen whether, for myne owne pte, although I doubt not, but yf there be anye such thinge, yo^r Lo^r: haue Adv^ticem^t from others, yet in dischardge of my dutye I thought yt meete to giue yo^r Lo^r: to understand what is heare reported, that in tyme yo^r Ho^rs maye thincke what course is best to be taken for the p^rventing of future dangers. besides, leſt yt maye be thought by yo^r Lo^rships. that I in that yt hath pleased her Mātye, to commaund me hether, should take ſome course in the best maner that maye bee, to make hedde againſt them, (for ſo I underſtoode here Ma^{ties} pleasure to bee) at ſuch tyme as they ſhould make anye atteſt, as well as to take care for the ſeacuringe of this place alone, & ſeeinge the danger of thinge, & howe reaſonablye it is for them, they ſhould atteſt ſomthinge upon us, & knowinge myſelf to haue no Authoritye or warrant, either from her Mātye or from yo^r Lo^rhip^s whereby they maye (that ar heare to be coſtaunded) take notyce of her highnes pleasure: I thought yt convenient for my better warrant, humblye to praye yo^r Lo^r: (yf it be ſtill her Ma^{ties} intent) that I may haue yt under her Highnes hand, for oth'wife as yo^r Lo^r: doeth knowe, I ſhall neither be ſecured in what I doe, nor will they bee willinge to doe, what is convenient for themſelves, th' experieſce of the w^{ch} I haue founde alreadye, & that maketh mee to write the more bolder unto yo^r Lo^r: / As conēninge the 50 men that ar appoynted for the garde of the Forte & Iſlande, yt is tyme that they were heare alreadye, as well to diſcharge

⁵⁰⁵ Blavet, called by Ralegh Blewatt, a roadſtead for the fleet to which Gorges is a ſeaport on the north coaſt of France. It furnished an excellent harbor and alludes.

charge the Dutye of Souldiers, as also to giue some helpe towarde the finishinge of the worke, yf yo^r Lo: did but see, what I doe dayelye fee, yo^r Ho: would make as much speede in causinge them to be sent as I am earnest to folicite yo^r Lo: for them, Humblye Committinge yt to yo^r Lo: wisdome & consideracon, cravinge yo^r Lo: pardon & prayinge to God for th increase of yo^r L^o hono^r & health I humblye take my leave/ Plymouthe the XIJth of April 1596./

Yo^r Lo: moste humblye to Commaunde /

FARD: GORGES.

End: 1596.

(State Papers, Domestic Correspondence, Elizabeth, Vol. CCLVII. No. 20.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.⁵⁰⁶

RIGHT HONO^RABLE, I haue written a Lrē unto my Lo:
yo^r Lo: shipps^s Father, the Copye of which I haue sent yo^r
Lo: heare inclosed, humbly desiringe yo^r Ho: to consider
of yt, for the p^reventinge of those evills w^{ch} maye heareafter
infue; yt is wthout all questione, that th' enimye hath an
intent by all the meanes they are able, to hinder the goinge
forwarde of this journey, & when they shall see they are not
able to doe yt, they will seeke assoone as they are gone, to
put some men a Shoare, & yf it be possible they will possesse
themselves

⁵⁰⁶ Sir Robert Cecil was the younger son of Lord Burghley and Mildred Cooke, and was born in 1563. He was a skilful politician and an astute statesman, but was physically inferior to the other royal favorites; yet he held his position by sheer force of intellect against the most powerful rivals. He was created

Earl of Salisbury May 4th, 1605, by James I., who retained him awhile in the office of Secretary of State which he had enjoyed under his predecessor, and then appointed him his Lord High Treasurer. Previous to his death, which took place in 1612, and which is most graphically described by his chaplain,

themselves of some lytle place or other, to help recov^r their owne disgrace. Yf thinge be not otherwise looked unto & better gaurded then yet they are, they may (wthout anye great daunger to themselves) doe more then I would bee willinge they shold attempt before wee be in a bett^r readynes for them. Yet maye be, the attendinge her M^tties pleasure for my entertaynm^t, wilbe a hinderaunce to th assyninge of my Commission for that matt^r, Whatsoev^r yo^r Lo: can reasonablye pswade her Highnes unto shall satisfye me, for I pteſt to God I never had nor ever will haue so great a respect to anye pticular Coſmodytye of myne owne, as I will either neclect my dutye unto her M^ttye, or defer to ferue my Contrye, especiallye at this tyme when I knowe the danger to be so greate, and that I can better discharge my dutye in this place then manye others that hath not had the like experience. I am too bolde (I must confesse) to write thus much unto yo^r Lo: Yet th' affuraunce I haue of yo^r Lo: Hono^rable favo^r and love, beeinge foe manye tymes Witnesſed unto mee by yo^r kinde Care & Welwishingee, although I must confesse, that I doe not fynde myself to deserve the least of them, And sythence I am not able to make anye other payem^t, I will continuallye praye for th' increase of yo^r hono^r — Plymouth the XIJth of Aprill 1596. /

Yo^r Lo: assured to Coſmaund / FARD : GORGES.

End: To the Right Honorable and my moſte affuſed Frende S^t Robte Cicell knight & of her M^tties moſte hono^rable privye Councello^r yeve theſe. 12 Apr: 1596. S^t Far: Gorges to my M^t: From Plymmothe./

(Cecil

Iain, Dr. John Bowles, he had fallen under the fickle King's displeasure, and but for his ſudden death, would proba- bly have ended his career in disgrace, like ſo many other royal ſervants.

(Cecil Papers 40/19.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONO^RABLE. there is brought heather by Capt: Clifforde a certaine Fly bote⁵⁰⁷ of Stawvert of Freezeland,⁵⁰⁸ in w^{ch} there is founde manye things belonginge unto Portugall merchaunts, as their tres and Bills of loadinge doth manifest. I have written of yt unto my Lo: yo^r Lo^rship^s Father, & thought yt likewise my dutye to advertize yo^r ho^{:s} of it in that both shee & her lodinge are delivered into my hands by Capt: Clifforde: & in regarde of my want of experience in such matters, I have taken for my help M^r Stallenge, & nowe I onelye attend what it shall please yo^r Lo^rship^s to commaunde.

Concerning myne owne occa^{cō}n^sons, I have & doe referr my self unto yo^r Lo: noble & kinde remembrance of mee, whoe doe take my self partlye to be disgraced, in that I am heare lefte neclected as either unworthy in my self, or unfortunate in my Frends; for my beeinge heare is to noe purpose, yf I maye neither have ample au^thoritye or sufficient meanes to dischardge that for w^{ch} I com, my last tres did suf- ficiently make manifest the necessitie of things, and therefor I shall not neede to troble yo^r Lo: wth much at thes p^rsent, onelye I doe desire that those men that are appoynted to com, maye bee sent wth speede, for yt were better they com too soone, then tarye too longe. Humblye remembringe
my

⁵⁰⁷ A flyboat was a long and rather flat-bottomed vessel, and was chiefly used by the Dutch in coasting.

Friesland on the Zuyder Zee, at this time of some importance, but now fallen into decay, principally on account of the filling up of the harbor.

⁵⁰⁸ A seaport in the Province of

my dutye unto yo^r Lo: whose hono^rable favo^rs, I wish myself able to deserve, till. when I will continuallye praye for th' increase of yo^r hono^r. Plymouthe the 21th daye of Aprill 1596.

Yo^r Lo^rshipp^s to Commaunde / FARD: GORGES.

Add: To the Right Honorable myne approved good Lo: S^r Robt Cysell Knight one of her Māties moſte hono^rable p^rvye Counſell yeve theis. End: 21 Apr. 1596. S^r Fardynando Gorges to my M^r. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 40/102.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONO^RABLE. I receaved yo^r Lo^rs letter the 18th at feaven of the Clock in the morning, aboute the which tyme, I alsoe delivered them unto their Lo: desiring their Lo: to make certificatt accordinglye, and withall to take notice of the necessities of this place accordinglye to th effect of yo^r last l^re, for yt is moſte like, p^rſentlye after the departure of the Fleet from hence, that th'enemye will attempt ſome thinge uppon these partes, and ſo much the more like, for that it is reported they haue certaine Shippes to the nomber of ſome 40 Sayles, all readye upon the Coast of Britanny, the which (yf their Lo: doe fayle to meeet w^thall) will afſaye what Gaurde wee keepe heere. Acknowledginge myſelf moſte bounde unto yo^r Ho^r: for yo^r manye and Ho^rble favo^rs, for the which, I can onelye bee, as I will moſte honeſtlye bee.

Yo^r Ho^rs: moſte at Commaund / FARD: GORGES.

PLYMOTH the 18th of Maye 1596.

Add: To the Right Hono^rable and my moſte approued S^r Roberte Ciffell Knight one of her Māties moſte ho^rble Privye Counſell yeve theis. End: 18 May 1596. S^r Ferd: Gorges to my M^r. ½ p.

(Cecil

(Cecil Papers 41/46.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONORABLE, the second daye of June towards the Evening the Fleete was inforst to put into the Sound againe, but upon the third, they sett Sayle aboute aleaven of the clock in the forenoone, & were all cleere out of sight before the writinge hereof, the w^{ch} I thought meete to advertize yo^r Ho: off, there was none of the Generalls themselves ashore, neither did they suffer anye of their Companey except such as by unffortune the night before they came in, had spent their masts or gotten some leakes, as had one Flye boate, and a Shippe of London, w^{ch} Ship having spent her fore top mast, is notwthstanding gone alonge wth the Fleete, but the Fly boate is inforst to unshipp her provisōns & imbark yt in a Hulke, w^{ch} wilbe readye some five or sixe dayes hence; other newes there hath not bin anye since the departure of S^r Henrye Lea⁵⁰⁹ & M^r Fooke Grivell. For myne owne parte I doe builde my hopes uppon yo^r Ho: favo^r, not doubting but their Lo^r: shipp^s havinge made knownen by their t̄res unto my Lo^r: yo^r Ho: Father, the dangerous estate of things heere, yt would please his Lo^r: to bee a meanes that thosē 50 men appointed for the Gaurde of this place, may be dispached, whose p'fence would give courage to the poore people,

⁵⁰⁹ Sir Henry Lee was one of the most gallant men of Queen Elizabeth's Court. So enthusiastic was he in his devotion to his royal mistress, that he presented himself annually on the 17th day of November as her champion, to prove by force of arms to all comers who dared dissent from him, that she

was the most beautiful and virtuous woman in the world. This custom of Sir Henry Lee established the 17th of November as the annual tilting day in England, and drew together large numbers of persons interested in feats of arms from all parts of Europe. He died in 1611 at the age of eighty.

people, whoe are nowe in doubte what to doe, and alsoe
 secure this place, w^{ch} lyeth as a praye to th'enimye, or rather
 perswadinge them to that, w^{ch} heretofore could not so easelye
 have bin beleived of them. It is my dutye to advertize thus
 much, but were yt not unto yo^r Ho: I would rather be con-
 tented to be sylent, as knowinge yt would be imagined I
 speake more for my particular Commoditye, then that there
 is anye such necessitie, and yf all the mens opinions that
 hath bin heere at this p^rsent of any judgment or understand-
 inge had bin asked, they would wth one voyce have sayd as
 much or more, as I at any tyme have written. Alsoe my
 humble request is that yt would please yo^r Ho: to consider
 the Charge that I leive att, & my noe entertainem^t the w^{ch}
 I have hetherunto reseaved, by the w^{ch} yo^r Ho: shall ever
 binde mee to continewe my self

At your ho serves / FARD: GORGES.

PLYMOTH the third daye of Iune.

Add: To the Right Honorable S^r Robte Ciffell Knight one of her M^ties moſte
 ho: privye Counsell yeve thes. End: 3 Junii 1596. S^r Fer: Gorges to my
 M^t From Plymmothe. This day y^e Fleet put to ſea, and was not ſeen after
 warde. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 41/49.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT Ho: I thought yt meete to advertize yo^r Ho: of
 ſome things that hath paſte betweene the Townes men &
 mee, for havinge assembled themſelves to gether to conſult
 as it ſhould ſeeme, of things concerninge the defence of
 themſelves & their Towne, and beeinge in the middeſt of
 their Conſultacons they ſent for mee by a S^rjeant to com-
 unto

unto them. Nowe I must plainlye confesse unto yo^r Ho:
that I skorned anye such manner of sending for, and re-
turned him back againe this verye answer & noe other, that
yf M^r Maior and his Bretherne had anye thinge to faye unto
mee, I prayed them to com unto my Lodginge where I
would meeet them, they receaving this aunswere, thought
themselves to be disgraced & brake up their Counsell in
a great furye, M^r Maior came into the Forte unto mee,
tellinge mee that I did them great wronge, to offer them
that, and in soe foolish & soe bravinge a manner it was done,
as yt will hardlye be beleived, and told mee that they would
muster & order their men at their owne pleasures, wth manye
other idle and foolish speeches, where upon I advised him
verye soberlye to look unto it, and not to doe yt wthout
order from yo^r Ho:^{rs} wthall lettinge him to knowe that yt
became him not to offer to drawe men into armes so neare a
Fortificacon of her Māties but by leave of the Commaundo^r
of the place, but hee aunswere mee, that I had noe Com-
mission to commaunde or impeach them from doinge what
they listed, upon the which, I p'sentlye commaunded him,
(sithenc hee knewe as well as myselfe the preparacon of th'en-
imye & their owne dangers), he would take order to send a
proporcon of men into the Island, & another into the Forte,
hee denied to receave anye Commaundem^t from mee for anye
such matter and soe departed, but by this yo^r Ho: maye see
how necessarye it is for a man that doth intend to discharge
the utmostste of his dutye, to have a Commission soe ample, as
hee maye wthout all Cavell or contradicon of soe ignorant &
stubbarne a people, commaunde in disrefcion what is for her
Māties service & for their owne safties, the w^{ch} thos poore
men

men are altogether ignorant off, and for myne owne parte I write not this to complayne of them, but humbly to intreat yo^r Ho: to consider of yt, so as I maye not receave more disgraces for want of auuthoritye sufficient, then I shalbe able to doe her Mātie service. Thus beeinge one-lye able to troble yo^r Ho: though alwayes readye to doe you all the hono^r & service that so poore a man is able to performe.

Your Ho: most at commaund / FARD: GORGES.

PLYMOUTH the 5th of June 1596.

Add. To the Right Honorable S^r Rob^te Cissell Knight, one of her Māties moſte Ho: privy Counſell yeve theſe. End: 5 Junii 1596. S^r Far. Gorge to my M^r from Plymmothe. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 42/31.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT Ho^{RLE}: our late alarom maye cause mee to receave ſome blame yf it bee not favorablē conſtruēd by yo^r Ho: and the reſt, but beefore I undertooke yt, I acquainted my Lo: Lieutenāt and others the Deputie Lieutenāts of the Shere wth my intente, the w^{ch} made mee the more bolder, beſides the fitnes of the opportunitye, the enemye beinge upon the Coaſte to the nomber of 30^{tie} Saile of ſhippinge, as they themſelves knowe, whoe havinge not longe ſince taken off o^r Fishermen in the mouth of the harbo^r, and the unwillingnes of ſome of the Inhabitannts to furniſh them ſelves wth ſuch furniture as is meete for their owne defence, the one beeinge a meaneſ to cauſe yt to bee the more certainlie beeſieued, the other plainlye demonſtratiſe unto them the wante

wante of those things the w^{ch} they maye reasonablie provide themselves off. And nowe by myne owne experience I finde they are neither armed accordinge as from time to time they perswaded me they were, nor will they be easelie drawne to anye good order, but what maye be done yo^r Ho: shall heare I will doe to the utmoste of my powre, and they have assur-edlie promised mee to amende all that is in their powers to help, other newes here is not anye fave that I had a smale prize of Rice sent me in by a Pynnesse of myne, the w^{ch} I sent after the Fleete, taken some 40^{tie} Leagues off the Cape, bound for Lisborne, who doth reporte that too daies before shee was taken (the w^{ch} was the 17th of Iune) shee fawte the Fleete bearinge for Cales. thus humbleye cravinge yo^r Ho: pardon acknowledginge the manye bands by the w^{ch} I finde my self indebted unto yo^r Ho: and beeinge hable to make payement of noe more, I beseech of yo^w to accept of me as

Your ho: Ever at coumaunde / FARD: GORGES.

PLYMOTH the 10th of Iulye 1596.

Add: To the Right Ho^{ble} S^r Robte Cessill Knight one of her Maties moste ho^{ble} privie Counsaile thes. End: 10 July 1596 S^r Far: Gorges to my M^r From Plymooth, 30 Sayle of Shippes descried on ye Coaste. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 42/73.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONORABLE: I have forborne to troble your Ho:
cheeflye for that ther hath not arived any maner of certeyn
newes, sinse the wrightinge of my last letters, more then as I

have

have written to my Lo: your Ho: father and your honor in answere of Mr Saunders his busines In the which I doe also desire your Ho: to take notes of such artillery as for the present time I have taken in, and doe hope it will not be dislikinge to theyr Lo: In like maner in what fort I doe proceed wth them of the towne I will accordinge unto my dutye make it knowne unto your Ho: whose many favours and honorable opinion I will endevour to the uttermost of my power to deserve.

Your Ho: ever to be commaunded / FARD: GORGES.

from the forte at PLIMOTH the 22th of Julye 1596.

Add. To the Right Honorable Sir Robert Cicell Knight principall secretarye to her majestie these be dd. End: 22 July 1596, S^r Ferdinando Gorges to my master. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 43/61.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

So foone as I had dispatched my last letters unto your Ho: my lo: admirall⁵¹⁰ arived wth y^e greatest part of y^e navye and this night my lo: of Essex wth all y^e rest of y^e fleet wilbe here. I doe not se but y^t very much goods wilbe embezled for y^e commissioners are not yeat com downe from y^e court, and the

⁵¹⁰ Sir Charles Howard, second Baron Howard of Effingham. For his great abilities in naval warfare he was created Lord High Admiral of England in 1585. He commanded the English fleet at the time of the destruction of the Spanish Armada, and was equally conspicuous in the capture of Cadiz and destruction

of the Spanish fleet. For these services the Queen bestowed upon him, in 1597, the earldom of Nottingham. He was a man of luxurious tastes, and lived in great magnificence, having, it is said, seven different seats, which he occupied by turns. He died in 1624.

the other commission upon the lo: comminge is now to surcease. And thus wth remembraunce of my humble duty I committ your Ho: to y^e protection of y^e almighty

Your Ho: to commaund / FARD: GORGES.

Add. To ye right honorable Sir Robert Ciffell Knight principall secretarye to her Ma^{tie}. End: 7 Aug: 1596 Sr Far: Gorges to my M^r L. Adm^{rel} arrived at Plymmoth wth most parte of y^e Navye. ½ p.

(Cecil Papers 43/64.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

I HAVE receyved your ho: letters of y^e 6th of this month wherin is to bee seene a purpose in her ma^{tie} to revictall certeyne shippinge for y^e meetinge wth ye Indian Fleet, as also for y^e transportinge of certeyne companyes for y^e lowe contryes, and others for Ireland. for y^e first your ho: shall perceyve will hardly be afflented unto, but y^e twoe latter wth smale difficulty wilbe brought to passe, for y^e manner how they may be furnished wth provision of victalls your ho: shall understand by y^e letter from Mr Stallenge and my selfe. Nowe if I may be bowld under your ho: correction, to speake what I thinke in my poore opinion what may be done in this case. I would say in wth out offence to any man of better judgment then my selfe that all this might very welbe performed. for first wheras it wilbe sayd theyr shippes are many of them, some leakinge some noe winter shippes, many of their mariners sicke and deade and some of theyr souldiers also, wherby they are perswaded it is impossible they should be newe furnished in any reasonable time eyther wth men or victalls, to y^e w^{ch} I answer that I doubt

doubt not, but here are Shippes of her ma^{tie} y^t may in very short time be furnished if speedy order be taken in it according to her ma^{tie} expectation. for this they must doe yf they will doe any thinge presently bringe all of them that they will use for that voyage into y^e harbour and instantly disimbarke the greatest part of y^e men, saving such as are to be used and employd as laborours, and by that meanes y^e shippes may be sweetned and trimmed, whilest y^e victalls are providinge and fresh men may be putt into them, wherof ther wilbe a sufficient number fownd, and the like may be done to some of the best marchants shippes. As for y^e souldiers, that are to goe into y^e lowe countries, they may be transported in those flemish bottomes w^{ch} are here and very fitly convoyed wth theyr owne mean of warr. Thoſe appoynted for Ireland may be transported in y^e hoyes that are here and ſome other shippes ſuch as may conveniently ſerve the turne, they that are to be lefte behind for y^e fickmen, they are to be ſent into theyr contryes as others alſo not to be employd in theſe ſervice. humbly recommending this unto your ho: wiſdome knowing that your ho: is not ignorant, that all y^t is already done is just nothing if this be not putt in practife. I humbly take my leave, deſiringe to be excufed for not wrighting oftener when ther is not ſome neceſſary occation that offereth it ſelfe. thus continuing

Your ho: ever to command / FARD: GORGES.

from PLIMOTH y^e 8th of August 1596.

Add: To ye Right honorable Sir Robert Ciffell principall ſecretarye to her ma^{tie} at y^e court. End: 8th of August 1596. Mr Ferdinando Gorge to my M^r: 1 p.

(Cecil

(Cecil Papers 43/67.)

SIR F. GORGES AND MR. STALLENGE TO THE COUNCIL.

WITH the remembraunce of o^r moste humble duties; It
maie please yo^r good Lops. In the absence of M^r Darell,⁵¹¹
wee have thought it meete to signifie oure opinions con-
cerning th effecting of that her Ma^{ts} pleasure is shoulde be
undertaken for the intercepting of the Indian Fleete, or the
Cariques;⁵¹²

Wee suppose in the 10 ships of her Ma^{ts} and 12 others
beeing of the better forte, as is neidful, there maie be im-
ploide aboute . 3800 . men w^{ch} with the helpe of suche
ruske,⁵¹³ wines oille, Rice and tonnyfishe,⁵¹⁴ as is retourned in
these ships (having present money) maie within 3 weekes be
verie well supplied with the rest for 2 monethes victuals
and without any great charges to her ma^{tie}, or greiffe to the
Country, So as the sicke men, and others retourned from
this service, not other waies to be imploide, maie be foorth-
with dismissed from theis partes, and withall present order
maie be geven, the officers make not spoille of that w^{ch} is
nowe remaining in the ships;

M^r

⁵¹¹ Sir Marmaduke Darrell, of Buck-
inghamshire, was a member of the fam-
ily formerly possesed of Littlecote, which
became the property of Sir John Pop-
ham, as related elsewhere. He was cof-
ferer to King James as well as to his
succesor Charles I., and Surveyor-
General of Victuals to the navy and
marine forces. He was knighted at
Whitehall on the accession of James in
1603, and died March 22d, 1631.

⁵¹² The carack was a vessel broad
and deep and of great burden, built for
carrying large cargoes, as the name
indicates.

⁵¹³ This was hard bread for use on
shipboard.

⁵¹⁴ The tunny is a fish of the mack-
erel family, and is an excellent food-
fish. It abounds in the Mediterranean,
and often attains the weight of a thou-
sand pounds.

Mr Darell departed from hens this afternoone unto whome by a messenger of purpose wee have signified yo^r Lps pleasures, and do expect him here this next morning, and having understande by him what remainers of victualls are in the Fleete, your hono^{rs} shall foorthwith be more particularlie adverticed howe all thinges maie be accomplished.

Wee do not finde, but the nomber of ships maie verie well be furnished of thoise nowe retourned of this service, with some smalle coste bestowed on them.

For the furnishing of victualls for . 1000 . Souldiers to be sent into Irelannd, the same maie verie well be donne in these parts. and shippng found fitte for the same ; and so with o^r humble duties to yo^r Lps ; wee comitt yo^u to god,

Yo^r Lps humble at comaundem^t/ FARD : GORGES.
W^m STALLENGE.

PLIMOUTH the 9th of August ann^o 1596.

Add. For her Ma^{ts} affaires. To the Right honourables the Lordes of her Ma^{ts} moste honourable privie counsell. At courte. End. 9 of Auguste 1596
Mr Ferdinando Gorge and Mr Stallenge to the Lords of the Counsayle. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 43/86.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONORABLE. Your letters cam two dayes to shorte, by reason of the sodaine departure of my Lo: Admerall wth the hole fleate bothe Englishe and Dutch, whereby it is to be feared, those honorable designements thought upon by yo^r Lordshipes wilbe frustrated ; thoughe for my owne parte I doe not doulte of the necessitie of eather : it as a pore wel-willer

willer of my cuntryes good, I doe hertelye wishe that that of the Indean fleate had gon forward for wth out all contradiction it was the most resoneblest and most necessarest that coulde have bin thought of; unlesse peradventure there are some secrets wth to us pore commoners are unknowne. I doubte not but your honor have receaved the particulers of ou^r proceadinges heare from the rest of the commitioners, whoe I must confesse are better able because better acquainted wth those corfes then I am; besides I have bin trublede this two dayes wth an extreame burninge feaver, the whiche dothe inforse me to use this brevitie with your honor; and alwaies to praye for you whoe have bin soe exceedinge noble unto me, and unfaynedlye to give my selfe to be disposed at

Yo^r honors commande / FARD: GORGES.

PLYMOUTH 13th of August 1596.

Holog. Add: for her Maties spetiall service. To the Right honorable S^r Robert Siffell knight principall secretarie to her magistrie Plymouth 13th August at night post haſt haſt haſt haſt Fard: Gorges. End: 13 August 1596 S^r Fa: Gorges to my M^r. 1 p. plymouth 13th August 11 at night. [Here follow the signatures of the postmasters on the route.] At Ashburton at 4 of the clock in the morninge. At Exeter past 7 of the clocke in the morning the 14 of August. Re at Honiton half our after 9 of the clocke in the mornynge. [torn off] Re^d at Andover the 15 of Auguste at 10 a clocke in the morninge. At Baffing stock half an ouer after 11 clok. Hartfوردbridge at 3 aftar nowen.

(Cecil Papers 44/48.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONORABLE myne evill fortune, to be sick at this preſent, may be a meanes, I may receyve condemnation of negligence, and forgetfullnes of my duty, but I hope to
find

find better constructions. My desire is especially to satisfie your Ho: unto y^e end I would be loth ther shoulde be bredd in you, any manner of occasion to suspect me, whose desire is by all meanes, to hould your honorable opinion, and in what measure I shall possibly be able, to deserve your many, and most honorable, and kind favours, done unto me, although I acknowledge, I am farr more like, to use your dayly favours, then that I see any cause, you shoulde have, to make use of my poore service; as at this present, when I have had a poore fortune, brought by y^e travell, of a company of poore mariners, to my hands, amounting to y^e value of 4 tonne of quicksilver, and being a commisioner to examine others, I thought it my dutie in honestie, and conscience, to declare agaynst my selfe, but as your Ho: may perceive by my letter, to your honours, ther wilbe smale hope of recovering any thing back agayne, but yeat my desire is, her ma^{ties} gratiouse opinion, may not for this be drawne from me, neyther yeat that theyr Lo: will conceive the worst, sith I had a desire, to satisfie my creditours wth this fortune Thus humbly referringe, to your ho: wisdom, and pleasure what your ho: pleasure is to command me to doe, ey ther in this concerning my dutye, or in any thing else, wherin my service may appere to your ho: who hath power to dispose of me at

Your ho: pleasure during life /

FARD: GORGES.

from PLIMOTH the 2 of September 1596.

Add. To y^e Right honorable Sir Robert Ciffell knight, principall secretarye to her Ma^{tie}. End. 2 Sep 1596. S^r Fa: Gorges to my M^r concerning his Prise of Quicksilver being 4 tonne. 1 p.

(Cecil

(Cecil Papers 44/76.)

[SIR F. GORGES] TO LORD BURGHLEY.

RIGHT HONORABLE, my humble duty remembred, these are to signifie unto your Lo: that according to our dutyes we have performed what lieth in us. And in discharge of my particular I thought it meet to advertise your Lo: what hath bin done in this time, wherin we have examined many upon oth and have fownd diverse of them carelesse both of bodye and soule, some we have made bould to punish in example of others, presuming that your Lo: wilbe pleased, to be a meane, that what we have done in that behalfe, or hereafter shall doe upon the like consideration, that we may be helde blameles, for our well meaninge to her ma^{tie} service. Besides we find that the most part of the things w^{ch} have bin sould here, was out of such shippynge as arived here som 3 or 4 dayes before the whole fleet, and those shippes w^{ch} had ought of any value had license by one or both of the Lo^{ds} generalls to depart and such license, as it was lawfull for them to make sale of any thinge they had wthout impeachment of any man. Nowe we would gladly know how it is your Lo: pleasure we should understand those licenses, other things then by those authorities were sould; we find nothing of any moment. In like manner such goods as were brought into this place by any vessells belonginge to this harbour, were imbarked by such, as had them freely given unto them by the generalls them selves, so as we for our parts doe not see what is more to be done, then that we have already performed, that is to take notice of the goods, the men of whom they were bought, the per-

sions in whose hands they are, and taking order they may be forth comminge or the value of them att your Lo: pleasure. If any thing more be in our duties to performe we humbly desire to be instructed from your Lo: we have intelligence of very many superstitious bookees that were brought from Cales, which are very daungerously spread abrode and may doe very much If they be not suppressed wherfore in this matter also we humbly crave your Lo: direction.

frō PLIMOTH the 8th of September 1596.

This letter is unsigned, but it bears Gorges' seal, & is in the same clerk's hand as 44/48. Add: To the Right honorable my singular good Lo: y^e Lo: high Threasurour of England. No endorsement. 1 p.

(Cecil Papers 44/80.)

SIR F. GORGES TO SIR R. CECIL.

RIGHT HONORABLE, for that it is not unknowne unto your ho: howe meane my estate and reputation in this place is, by the necessitie wherof I am enforced continually rather to be a troble then otherwise unto myne honorable frends, and howlding your ho: as one of the cheefest of them, I am embowldened to crave your honorable helpe and furtherance, in this my poore fute, the w^{ch} is that sith Sir Ihon Gilbert⁵¹⁵ is dead, and his place of viceadmiraltie voyd, I may

⁵¹⁵ The Sir John Gilbert here mentioned was the uterine brother of Sir Walter Ralegh and brother to the famous Sir Humphrey and Adrian Gilbert. He had served as Deputy Vice-

Admiral of Devon for ten years, having first obtained his office in 1586 through the influence of Ralegh, who was then Vice-Admiral of Cornwall and Devon.

may be held in your honorable opinion worthy of it, and that by your meanes I may so be nominated for it, w^{ch} if I may atteyne unto, I shalbe more enabled to make shewe how much I acknowledge my selfe bownd unto your ho: and in the meane time (as evermore I will) I doe pray for your encrease of honour, and presurvation of helth. And soe I rest continually.

Your Ho: ever at command / FARD: GORGES.

from PLIMOTH the 10th of September 1596.

Add: To the Right honorable S^r Robert Ciffell knight, principall secretarie to her Mat^e. End: 10 Sept 1586. S^r Far: Gorges to my M^r from Plymmothe.
S^r Jo: Gylbert dead. 1 p.





I N D E X.





I N D E X.

A.

Abenakis, 75.
Aberemet, 14.
Acadia, 214.
Achims, Mary, 167.
Achims, Thomas, 167.
Adams, Nathaniel, 217.
Adelmar, Sir Julius Cæsar, 30, 32.
Agamentico River, 57, 58.
Aife, John, 166.
Albemarle, 199.
Alderton, 164.
Alderton Church, 164.
Alexander, Sir Jerome, 189.
Alexander, Rose, 189.
Alexander, Sir William, 55, 56.
Allen, John, 150.
Allen, Samuel, 217, 218.
All Saints' Church, 161.
Alvarez, Pedro, 71.
Ambergris, 126.
America, 3, 4, 8, 12, 22, 32, 45, 46, 71,
175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 182, 189,
195, 199, 201, 203, 218.
Amiens, 62.
Ancient, 230.
Andros, Sir Edmund, 172.
Archæologia, 153, 160.

Archdale, 169, 170, 214, 215, 220.
Archdale, Mary, 174.
Archdale, Thomas, 174.
Armada, 242.
Arthur, Prince of Wales, 160.
Arundel, Earl of, 7, 8, 31, 32, 35, 54.
Ashburton, 247.
Ashley, 174.
Ashmolean Manuscripts, 158.
Ashton Court, 167.
Ashton Phillips, 167, 174.
Aſſeſcomet, 11, 22, 23, 27.
Asticou, 14, 19, 75.
Atlantic Ocean, 25, 171.
Audrey, 191.
Avalon, Province of, 32.
Ayſſhe, John, 164.
Azores, 4.

B.

Baden, Margrave of, 164.
Baliol College, 31.
Ballard, the Rev. Edward, 57.
Baltimore, Baron, 32.
Banks, Charles Edward, 169.
Barbadoes, 20, 177, 189, 199.
Bashabas, 14, 19, 21, 74, 75, 76.
Baffing Stock, 247.

- Batavia, 72.
 Bath, 163, 219.
 Battcumbe, 191.
 Baynard, Alice, 186.
 Baynard, Barbara, 186.
 Baynard, Thomas, 186.
 Bay of Boston, 203, 205.
 Beauchamp, Agnes, 158.
 Beauchamp, Joan, 160.
 Beauchamp, John, 160.
 Beddington, 164.
 Bedford, Earl of, 164.
 Belknap, the Rev. Jeremy, 217.
 Bell, Ann, 167.
 Bell, Edward, 151, 167.
 Bell, Edward, Jr., 150.
 Bennett, Governor, 201.
 Bergen-op-Zoom, 23.
 Berkeley, George, Lord, 198.
 Berkeley, Henry, Lord, 165.
 Bermudas, 12, 13.
 Berwick, 154, 157.
 Biard, P. Pierre, 14, 19, 75.
 Blathwait, William, 219.
 Blavet, 232.
 Bligh, William, 167.
 Blunt, Sir Christopher, 92.
 Bodleian Library, 158, 162.
 Boles, William, 54.
 Boleyn, Anne, 33, 161.
 Boston, 57, 148, 173, 203, 216, 220;
 the Corporation of, 171, 210.
 Bostoners, 215, 216.
 Bosworth Field, 161, 167.
 Bowles, Dr. John, 234.
 Boyle, Richard, 198.
 Boyle, Robert, 19⁸, 200.
 Brackley, Viscount, 98.
 Bradford, Gov. William, 48.
 Braunton, 153.
 Brazil, 71, 72.
 Bridport, 158.
 Brighouse, Michael, 203.
 Brightstowe, 161.
 Brill, the, 64, 229.
 Brimstone, 126.
 Bristol, 11, 26, 58, 152, 158.
 British Museum, 85, 92, 158, 159, 163,
 185, 188, 194, 199, 210, 213.
 Brittany, 236.
 Brook, Nathaniel, 177, 178, 179, 182,
 184.
 Brooke, 190.
 Brooke, Baron, 31.
 Brown, Sir William, 116.
 Browne, the Rev. Frederic, 162.
 Brudenell, E., 178, 179.
 Brymore, 199.
 Buckingham, Duke of, 33, 160.
 Buckinghamshire, 245.
 Buckland, John, 150.
 Budockshad, Roger, 163.
 Budockshad, Winifred, 163, 186.
 Burghley, Lord, 225, 226, 227, 228, 231,
 233, 249.
 Burghley Papers, 163.
 Burrage, the Rev. Henry S., 7.
- C.
- Cade Rebellion, 161.
 Cadiz, 242.
 Calais, 54, 241, 250.
 Calamy, Edward, 59.
 Calehall, Cecilia, 153.
 Calehall, Margaret, 153.
 Calehall, William, 153.
 Calthrop, Sir Henry, 40.
 Calvert, Cecil, 32.

- Calvert, Sir George, 31, 32.
Cambridge, Earl of, 54.
Camden Society, 164.
Camden, William, 96.
Campbell, Lord, 36.
Canada, 76, 214.
Canterbury, 164.
Cape Breton, 10.
Cape Cod, 8, 35, 125.
Cape Elizabeth, 76.
Cape Fear, 4.
Carack, 245.
Carentan, 151.
Carew, 229, 230.
Carey, Henry, 33.
Carey, Mary, 33.
Carey, William, 33, 166.
Carlaverock, 153.
Carleton, Mr., 185.
Carlisle, Earl of, 20, 64.
Carlton Ride, 156, 158, 159.
Carr, Sir Robert, 170.
Cartier, Jacques, 45.
Catayons, 80, 81.
Cathay, 80.
Catherine of Arragon, 160.
Cave, Eleanor de, 153.
Cecil Papers, 228, 235, 237, 238, 240,
 241, 242, 243, 246, 247, 249, 250.
Cecil, Sir Robert, 16, 22, 32, 96, 100,
 110, 229, 231, 233, 234, 235, 236, 238,
 240, 241, 242, 243, 246, 247, 248,
 250, 251.
Challons, Capt. Henry, 9, 11, 22, 27.
Champernoun, Francis, 163.
Champlain, Sieur Samuel de, 14, 19,
 25, 45, 183.
Chapman, Abraham, 168.
Charles I., 23, 33, 40, 54, 55, 64, 123,
 201, 214, 245.
Charles II., 168, 198, 199, 200, 203, 206,
 216, 220.
Charles, Prince, 20.
Charlton Manor, 163.
Chedder, 190.
Chedder Church, 186.
Chesapeake Bay, 13.
Cheshire, 98.
Chester, 201.
China, 80.
Chinawaines, 80, 81.
Chipping Wycombe, 174.
Christon, 165.
Clare, Earl of, 198.
Clarendon, Earl of, 170, 197, 198.
Clerkenwell, 166, 167, 168.
Clevedon, 164.
Clifford, Sir Conyers, 164.
Clifforde, Capt., 235.
Cockington, 189, 191.
Coffin, the Rev. Paul, 8.
Coke, Sir Edward, 31, 35, 36, 40, 43,
 44, 128.
Colleton, Sir John, 199, 200.
Collins, Arthur, 152.
Colonial Papers, 197, 201, 203, 207.
Columbus, Christopher, 71, 176, 182.
Cooke, Jo., 207.
Cooke, Mildred, 233.
Coplestone, Joanna, 161.
Coplestone, Thomas, 161.
Copper, 126.
Cork, Earl of, 198.
Cornwall, 3, 167, 192, 229, 230,
 250.
Corunna, 230.
Cotterell, Jane, 150.
Cotterell, John, 150.
Cotton, 73.
Cotton Manuscripts, 85.

Council for planting, ruling, and governing New England, 47, 48, 49, 51, 54, 55, 59, 64, 123.
 County Palatine, 127.
 Court Baron, 139.
 Court de Wyke, 159.
 Court Leet, 139.
 Courtney, Edward, 167.
 Coventry, 155.
 Coventry, Sir Thomas, 31, 40.
 Cranfield, Sir Lionel, 33.
 Crobay, 159.
 Cromwell, Oliver, 57, 199.
 Croome, Dabitor, 31.
 Crouch, Walter, 165.

D.

Dacre, Francis, Lord, 198.
 Danvers, Sir Charles, 119.
 Darrell, Sir Marmaduke, 245, 246.
 Dartmouth, 198.
 Davis, Sir John, 35, 119, 120.
 Day, 46, 47.
 Dean, John Ward, 124.
 Deer, 74, 126.
 Dehamda, 14.
 De la Tour, 55, 56.
 Delaware Bay, 170.
 Delbridge, John, 35.
 Denbigh, 201.
 Deodands, 128, 129.
 Dermer, Capt. Thomas, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 45.
 Derwell, 163.
 Devereaux, Robert, 225.
 Devereaux, Walter, 225.
 Devonshire, 152, 153, 178, 179, 190, 206, 250.

Dieppe, 28.
 Digby, Sir Kenhelm, 31, 33.
 Digges, Sir Dudley, 201.
 Digges, Edward, 200, 201.
 Dillon, 160.
 Doddleton, 98.
 Dodington, Henry, 165.
 Domestic Correspondence, 198, 231, 233.
 Doncaster, Viscount of, 64.
 Donne, 166.
 Dorset, Earl of, 110.
 Dorsetshire, 12, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 158, 162.
 Dorset Street, 110.
 Dover, 199.
 Dover Castle, 199.
 Downton, Wilts, 164.
 Drake, Sir Francis, 230.
 Drury House, 105, 119.
 Drury, Sir William, 163.
 Dublin, 116.
 Dudley, Robert, 164.
 Dudley, Thomas, 62, 209.
 Duncannon Castle, 116.
 Dundalk, Baron, 218.
 Durham, 127.
 Durham House, 93.
 Dutch, the, 41, 46, 47, 48, 72, 170, 229, 246.
 Dutch West India Company, 46.

E.

East Greenwich, 127, 202, 205.
 East Hampton, 161.
 East India Company, 8, 126.
 East Indies, 71, 72.
 Eastlanders, 75.

- Edmonds, Sir Clement, 35.
Edward I., 139, 153.
Edward III., 157, 158.
Edward IV., 160.
Edward VI., 159, 160, 228.
Effingham, 100, 242.
Effingham, Charles, Baron of, 100, 242.
Egerton Manuscripts, the, 210.
Egerton, Sir Thomas, 98.
Eleanor, Princess, 153.
Elias, 169.
Elizabeth, Lady, 20.
Elizabeth, Queen, 3, 5, 7, 31, 32, 33, 64,
99, 164, 228, 229, 237; books relating
to her reign, 164, 231, 233.
Ellesmere, Baron, 98.
England, 2, 4, 6, 7, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20,
22, 23, 28, 32, 53, 54, 55, 59, 62, 64,
66, 70, 126, 127, 129, 131, 133, 136,
137, 139, 140, 144, 146, 151, 160, 162,
163, 167, 170, 171, 172, 173, 187, 196,
201, 202, 203, 206, 210, 215, 216, 219,
230, 237, 242.
Epenow, 20, 22, 23, 24, 29.
Epps, William, 29.
Essex, Earl of, 54, 85, 88, 89, 90,
92, 93, 95, 96, 99, 104, 109, 110, 115,
116, 119, 120, 166, 225, 227, 228, 229,
242.
Essex House, 93, 95, 96, 98, 109, 110.
Essexshire, 167, 168, 174.
Europe, 237.
Evelyn, John, 219.
Exeter, 189, 206, 247.
- F.
- Falkland, Viscount, 33.
Ferrers, Guy de, 156.
- Fife, County of, 64.
Finch, Baron John, 40.
Fish, 74, 137, 163.
Fisheries, 229.
Fishing, 78.
Flax, 73.
Flax Boniton, 190.
Fleet Lane, 94.
Fleet Prison, 94.
Flodden Field, 161, 162.
Flushing, 229.
Flyboat, 235.
Foliot, Margaret, 152.
Foliot, Tamerton, 152.
Fowl, 74.
Foyle, Catherine, 174.
France, 44, 54, 62, 65, 110, 160, 162,
180, 232.
French, 41, 76, 214.
Friesland, 235.
Fryeburg, 75.
Fulford, Sir Francis, 167.
Fulford, Mary, 167.
Furs, 79, 80.
Fynes, Lady Frances, 168.
- G.
- Gafcony, 153.
Gatehouse, 85, 106.
Gates, Elizabeth, 12.
Gates, Mary, 12.
Gates, Sir Thomas, 12, 13.
Gatton, 159.
Gaveland, 157.
Genealogist, 160.
Georges River, 8.
Gift of God, 13.
Gilbert, Adrian, 250.

Gilbert, Dorothy, 166.
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 3, 4, 250.
 Gilbert, Sir John, 16, 250, 251.
 Gilbert, Capt. Ralegh, 13, 14, 16.
 Gilberts, 163.
 Glafcock, Sir William, 199.
 Gloucester, 151.
 Gloucestershire, 164.
 Goche, Dr. Barnaby, 54.
 Gold, 126, 128.
 Goodman, 54.
 Goodyear, Moses, 187.
 Gorges, Alexander, 189, 191, 192.
 Gorges, Alice, 165.
 Gorges, Ann, daughter of Edmund, 165.
 Gorges, Ann, daughter of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Ann, daughter of Ferdinando, 174.
 Gorges, Ann, daughter of John, 168.
 Gorges, Ann, daughter of Robert, 186.
 Gorges, Ann, wife of Sir Ferdinando, 151.
 Gorges, Barbara, 186.
 Gorges, Bartholomew, 158.
 Gorges, Cecilia, 168, 174.
 Gorges, Dorothy, daughter of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Dorothy, wife of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Edmund, son of Sir Edmund, 163, 164, 165, 166.
 Gorges, Edmund, son of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Sir Edmund, 160, 161.
 Gorges, Edward, father of Sir Ferdinando, 164.
 Gorges, Edward, son of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Edward, son of Thomas, 189.
 Gorges, Sir Edward, 65, 150, 161, 162.
 Gorges, Eleanor, 156, 157.
 Gorges, Eleanor de, 152, 153.

Gorges, Elizabeth, daughter of Edward, 166.
 Gorges, Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Edward, 163, 164.
 Gorges, Elizabeth, daughter of Ferdinando, 174.
 Gorges, Elizabeth, daughter of Sir Theobald, 160.
 Gorges, Elizabeth, daughter of Thomas, 189, 191, 192.
 Gorges, Elizabeth, wife of Sir Ferdinando, 150, 164, 167.
 Gorges, Ellen, 167.
 Gorges family, 150, 151.
 Gorges, Ferdinando, son of Ferdinando, 174.
 Gorges, Ferdinando, son of John, 57, 58, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 174, 175, 177, 179, 180, 182, 183, 184, 185, 189, 195, 198, 200, 201, 203, 206, 207, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 218, 219, 221.
 Gorges, Ferdinando, son of Thomas, 189, 190, 191, 192.
 Gorges, Capt. Ferdinando, 186.
 Gorges, Sir Ferdinando, his mistake concerning the Bashabas, 14; error in his narrative, 15: objected to fishing in the North Colony, 34, 35; accused of holding a monopoly, 36, 37, 43; opposed De Tillières, 45; a man of elevated motives, 69; his line extinct, 174; letters to the Earl of Essex, 225-227, 227, 228-229; to Cecil, 229-231, 233-234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 240, 241, 242, 243, 246, 247, 250; to Burghley, 231-233, 249; to the Council, 245; mentioned, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 16, 17, 27, 29, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 56, 57, 71, 72, 74, 75, 76, 81, 85, 92,

- 96, 115, 121, 123, 124, 127, 129, 130,
131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138,
139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 150,
151, 164, 166, 167, 168, 170, 173, 175,
177, 178, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 188,
189, 191, 195, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205,
214, 219, 232.
Gorges, Florence, 158.
Gorges, Frances, 165, 166.
Gorges, Helena, 164, 165.
Gorges, Henry, son of Edmund, 165.
Gorges, Henry, son of Robert, 186.
Gorges, Henry, son of Thomas, 189,
192.
Gorges, Honoria, 167.
Gorges, Isabella, daughter of Edward,
166.
Gorges, Isabella, daughter of Thomas,
158.
Gorges, Jane, daughter of Sir Edmund,
163, 164.
Gorges, Jane, daughter of John, 168.
Gorges, Jane, daughter of Sir Theo-
bald, 160.
Gorges, John, son of Edmund, 165.
Gorges, John, son of Sir Edmund, 161.
Gorges, John, son of Sir Ferdinando,
151, 167, 168, 195.
Gorges, John, son of Henry, 186, 188.
Gorges, John, son of Thomas, 158, 159.
Gorges, Margaret, daughter of Ed-
mund, 165.
Gorges, Margaret, daughter of Sir
Edmund, 161.
Gorges, Mary, daughter of Edmund,
165.
Gorges, Mary, daughter of Sir Ed-
ward, 163, 164.
Gorges, Mary, daughter of Ferdinando,
174.
Gorges, Mary, wife of Sir Ferdinando,
167.
Gorges, Mary, wife of Thomas, 190.
Gorges, Matilda, 160.
Gorges, Sir Nicholas, 163, 164, 165.
Gorges Point, 187.
Gorges, Ralph de, 7th, 152.
Gorges, Ralph de, 8th, 153.
Gorges, Ralph de, 9th, 153, 154, 156.
Gorges, Ralph de, 10th, 156.
Gorges, Sir Ralph, 158.
Gorges, Randolph de, 151, 152, 166.
Gorges, Richard, son of Ferdinando,
174.
Gorges, Richard, son of Theobald, 160.
Gorges, Lord Richard, 174, 218.
Gorges, Robert, 165.
Gorges, Capt. Robert, 49, 51, 52, 53,
59, 167, 219, 221.
Gorges, Dr. Robert, 186, 191.
Gorges, Sir Robert, 150, 166, 186.
Gorges, Rose, 189, 192.
Gorges, Samuel, son of Edmund, 165.
Gorges, Samuel, son of Edward, 166.
Gorges, Samuel, son of Sir Edward,
150, 190.
Gorges, Susannah, 189, 191.
Gorges, Sir Theobald, 158, 159, 160,
174.
Gorges, Sir Theobald Russell, 157–158,
158.
Gorges, Thomas, son of Ferdinando,
174.
Gorges, Thomas, son of Henry, 186,
188, 189, 190, 192.
Gorges, Thomas, son of Ralph de,
152.
Gorges, Thomas, son of Theobald, 158.
Gorges, Thomas, son of Thomas, 189,
190, 191.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Gorges, the Rev. Thomas, son of Edward, 166.
Gorges, Sir Thomas, 163, 164.
Gorges, Sir Tristram, 167.
Gorges, Walter, son of Sir Edmund, 161.
Gorges, Walter, son of Sir Theobald, 160.
Gorges, William, son of Sir Edward, 163, 164.
Gorges, William, son of Sir Theobald, 158.
Gorges, William, son of Thomas, 158, 159.
Gorges, Capt. William, 58.
Gorges, Winifred, 163.
Gorgiana, 57.
Gofnold, Bartholomew, 22.
Governor and Council of Massachusetts Bay, 170.
Gray's Inn, 40.
Great Smead, 191.
Green, Mary A. E., 152, 153.
Greenwich, 161.
Greenwood, Ann, 192.
Greenwood, Martin, 192.
Grenville, Sir Richard, 3, 4.
Greville, Sir Fulke, 31, 32, 237.
Groton, 62.
Guienne, Duchy of, 157.
Guinea, the, 169. | Hampton Court, 23.
Hampton, Joan, 161.
Hampton, John, 161.
Harleian Miscellany, 188.
Harley, Capt. Henry, 20.
Harlow, Capt. Edward, 20.
Harrington, Sir John, 5.
Hartfordshire, 247.
Hart's College, 166.
Hartwell, 164.
Harvard College, 148.
Hatch, John, 160.
Hatton, Lady, 36.
Havana, 10.
Hay, Sir James, 64.
Hazard, Ebenezer, 124.
Heavitree, 189.
Hemp, 73.
Henry III., 152.
Henry IV., 62, 110.
Henry VI., 159.
Henry VII., 160.
Henry VIII., 161, 162, 165.
Herbert, Sir John, 110.
Herrera, Anthony, 183.
Heylyn, 164.
Hobson, Capt., 23, 26, 27.
Holland, 47, 173.
Hollanders, 45, 72.
Honyton, 247.
Horrington, 159, 160.
Hotton, J. C., 189.
Hounslow, 164.
Howard, Lady Anne, 161.
Howard, Catherine, 161.
Howard, Lord Charles, 100, 242.
Howard, Lord John, 160, 161.
Howard, Lord Thomas, 5, 32.
Howe, Alexander, 200, 201.
Hubbard, William, 48. |
|---|--|
- H.
- Hakluyt, Richard, 2.
 Hall, 167.
 Hall, Bishop, 191.
 Hamilton, Marquise of, 47, 49, 54, 65.
 Hampton, 219.

Hudson, Henry, 45.
Hudson River, 45, 47, 64.
Hugo, the Rev. Thomas, 162.
Humphrey, John, 62.
Hungarians, 163.
Hungary, 7.
Hunsdon, Baron, 33.
Hurons, the, 25.
Hyde, Alice, 186.
Hyde, Edward, 197, 198.

I.

India, 80.
Indian Fleet, 243, 245, 247.
Indians, 19, 20, 75, 81, 176, 179, 183.
Indies, 10.
Ireland, 3, 33, 54, 163, 243, 244, 246.
Iroquois, 25.
Irvington, 150.
Island of Canara, 10.
Island of Capawick, 20, 22, 26, 28, 29,
 125.
Islands of the Virginians, 73.
Isle of Purbeck, 161.
Isles of Shoals, 125.
Isle of Wight, 23, 152, 157, 198.
Italy, 32.

J.

James I., 5, 22, 25, 31, 32, 33, 44, 54,
 55, 56, 64, 99, 116, 127, 164, 229, 233,
 245.
James II., 173.
James River, 201.
Java, 72.
Jeffries, John, 200, 201.
Joanna, Princess, 153.

John, King of England, 152.
John, John Fitz, 157.
Johnson, Edward, 57, 175, 181, 183.
Jones, Christopher, 165.
Jones, Matthias, 165.
Jones, Mr., 47.
Jones, the Rev. William, 165.

K.

Kendall, Thomas, 199, 200, 201.
Kennebec River, 123, 125, 214.
Kent, 127.
Kingston, Russell, 156, 157.
Knighton-Gorges, 157.
Kydwelly, Sir Morgan, 161.

L.

Laconia, 123, 207.
Ladock, 167.
Laet, Jean de, 183.
Lake Champlain, 123.
Lambeth, 158.
Lancaster, Earl of, 154, 155.
Landrake, 167.
Lansdowne Manuscripts, 163, 164, 188.
Lead, 126.
Lee, Sir Henry, 237.
Leere, Sir Peter, 199.
Leicester, Earl of, 164, 225.
Leighs, 59.
Leland, John, 161.
Lennox, Duke of, 47, 49, 54, 64.
L'Escarbot, Marc, 14, 19, 75, 76, 183.
Levison, Sir John, 96.
Leyden, 48.
Lilliford, 160.
Lincoln, Countess of, 47.

- Lincoln, Earl of, 62, 168, 198.
 Lisbon, 241.
 Litchfield, 23.
 Littlecoat, Simon, 161.
 Littlecote, 245.
 Little Sodbury, 164.
 Loaks, 174.
 London, 12, 20, 22, 45, 46, 94, 119, 155,
 166, 167, 174, 214, 217, 237.
 Londonderry, 186.
 Long Ashton, 149.
 Low Countries, 164.
 Lower Ashton, 167.
 Loxton, 165.
 Lucy, Sir John, 96.
 Ludgate, 164.
 Luttrell, John, 166.
 Lygon, Cicely, 165.
 Lygon, William, 165.
 Lytton, Mr., 119, 121.
- M.
- Madresfield, 165.
 Magdalen College, 54.
 Maine, 65, 76, 123, 125, 129, 168, 169,
 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 186, 189,
 190, 191, 196, 200, 202, 203, 207, 213,
 214, 215, 220, 221.
 Maine Historical Society, 8, 55, 173,
 194.
 Major, Mr., 239.
 Malaga, 26.
 Malamake River, 65.
 Mallack, Rawlin, 189, 191, 192.
 Mallack, Roger, 189.
 Manchester, Earl of, 198.
 Manida, 8, 11.
 Manfell, Sir Robert, 54.
-
- Marlborough, Earl of, 198.
 Martha's Vineyard, 20.
 Martyn, Capt. John, 30.
 Mary and John, 13.
 Maryland, 32.
 Mary, Queen of England, 32, 228.
 Mary, Queen of Scotland, 164.
 Mason, Capt. John, 55, 56, 57, 65, 123,
 169, 217.
 Mason, Robert, 40, 171, 172, 210, 211,
 212.
 Massachusetts Archives, 124, 194.
 Massachusetts Bay, 50, 221.
 Massachusetts Bay Colony, 47, 49, 52,
 59, 62, 148, 168, 170, 172, 173, 196,
 203, 204, 205, 207, 209, 215, 216, 217,
 218, 221.
 Massachusetts Historical Society, 49.
 Massachusets Indians, 76.
 Masse, P. Ennemond, 19.
 Mather, Cotton, 49.
 Mathews, Master, 24.
 Maurice, Prince, 46.
 Maverick, Samuel, 170.
 Mawoothen, 76.
 Maximilian II., 163.
 Mayflower, 47.
 Meade, Sir John, 168.
 Meade, Mary, 168.
 Mediterranean Sea, 245.
 Mennes, Sir John, 199.
 Mercurius, Publicus, the, 185.
 Merrimac River, 65, 123.
 Middlesex, Earl of, 33.
 Middle Temple, the, 40.
 Middleton, Earl of, 199, 200.
 Minehead, 191.
 Moasham, 76.
 Mondragon, 228.
 Monk, General, 206.

Monmouth, Duke of, 173.
Monomack River, 65.
Moody, 174
Morgan, John, 164.
Morice, Sir William, 206.
Morton, 47, 48.
Morville, Eleanor de, 152, 153.
Moshoquen, 76.
Mount Desert, 19.
Mowbray, Baron, 198.
Mulgrave, Lord, 64.

N.

Nantucket, 29.
Nassau, 46.
Naunton, Sir Robert, 31, 33, 99.
Nautican, 29, 125.
Neill, Edward D., 36, 126.
Netherlands, 23.
New Amsterdam, 170.
Newcastle, Earl of, 54.
Newcastle-upon-Tyne, 154, 155.
New England, 8, 14, 25, 26, 27, 28, 36,
48, 51, 52, 53, 56, 57, 63, 73, 74, 166,
167, 168, 169, 171, 172, 173, 177, 179,
181, 183, 184, 186, 189, 191, 196, 200,
201, 203, 207, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214,
215, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221.
Newfoundland, 27, 28, 32, 55, 78.
New Hampshire, 171, 172, 210, 217.
Newichewannock River, 124, 125.
New Netherland, 46.
New Plymouth, 49, 50. *See* Plymouth,
Mafs.
New Scotland, 56.
New Somersetshire, 166.
Newton, Sir Henry, 162.
Newton, Sir John, 162.

Newton, Mary, 162.
Newton, Thomas, 161.
New York, 48, 170.
Nichols, John, 164.
Nonconformists, 62.
Norfolk, 163.
Norfolk, John, Duke of, 161.
Norfolk, Thomas, Duke of, 161.
Normandy, 151, 152.
Northampton, 62.
Northampton, Lord, 33.
Northampton, Marchioness of, 164,
174.
Northants, 164.

North Carolina, 169.
North Cheriton, 159.
North Colony, 31, 34, 35, 36.
Northern Plantation, 30.
North River, 46.
Norton, Agnes, 158.
Norton, Francis, 57.
Norton, Thomas, 158.
Nottingham, Earl of, 100, 242.
Nova France, 45.
Nova Scotia, 55.
Ntahanada, 14.

O.

Ogungigg (Ogunquit) River, 191.
Oldhall, Mary, 161.
Oldhall, Sir William, 160.
Old James, 198.
Old South Church, 148.
Orcheston, 161.
Ottawas, 25.
Oviedo, 183.
Oxford, 189.

P.

Palatine, Prince, 20.
 Palmer, Geoffrey, 169, 201, 203.
 Parham, 199.
Pascataqua. *See* Piscataqua.
 Patent of New England, 35, 39, 43.
 Pearls, 126, 128.
 Peche, Sir John, 156.
 Pemaquid, 8, 76.
 Penobscot Indians, 75, 76.
 Penobscot River, 75.
 Percival, James, 165.
 Phillips, Sir Robert, 44.
 Pierce, John, 46.
 Pigwacket, 75.
 Pilchards, 229.
 Pilgrim Hall, 47.
 Pilgrims, 47, 48.
 Pinzon, Vincent, 71.
 Pirates, Algerine, 33.
 Piscataqua, 170, 208.
Piscataqua Grant, 123.
Piscataqua Harbor, 124, 125.
Piscataqua River, 75, 123, 125, 214.
 Pitch, 73.
 Pitcorthie, 64.
 Plymouth Council, 219.
 Plymouth, England, 4, 7, 12, 13, 28, 30,
 47, 58, 59, 115, 156, 178, 179, 187, 206,
 231, 233, 234, 236, 238, 240, 241, 242,
 243, 244, 246, 247, 248, 250, 251.
 Plymouth, Mass., 47, 49, 50, 59.
 Plymouth Patent, 25.
 Pointz, Sir Anthony, 162.
 Pointz, Mary, 162.
 Poole, Sir Gyles, 163.
 Popham Colony, 14, 20, 22.
 Popham, Sir Francis, 15, 16.
 Popham, Capt. George, 13.

Popham, Sir John, 11, 15, 16, 98, 245.
 Portland, 76.
 Portland, Jerome, Earl of, 198.
 Portland, Richard, Earl of, 198.
 Portsmouth, 57.
 Portugal, 71; the king of, 71.
 Poundstock, 192.
 Povey, Thomas, 199, 200.
 Preston, battle of, 54.
 Prefumpcot River, 76.
 Prince Society, 124.
 Pring, Capt. Martin, 11, 14.
 Privy Council, 30, 32, 33.
 Provincial Records of New Hampshire,
 217.
 Public Record Office, 22, 29, 55, 92,
 124, 152, 164, 169, 194, 197, 198, 201,
 207, 214, 217, 218.
 Purchase, the Rev. Samuel, 30, 76.
 Puritans, 59.
 Pym, Charles, 199, 200.

Q.

Queen's Guard, 96.
 Quo Warranto, 216.

R.

Ralegh, Sir Walter, 3, 4, 36, 92, 93, 94,
 95, 106, 163, 232, 250.
 Randolph, Edward, 172, 173.
 Rawlinson Manuscripts, 162.
 Reynell, Sir Carew, 115.
 Richard II., 158.
 Richard III., 160.
 Richmond, Duke of, 64.
 Richmond, Earl of, 54.
 Richmond Island, 187.

Ripon, 156.
River Mauritius, 46.
River Meuse, 229.
River of St. Johns, 55.
River of the Mountains, 46.
River Ogarnogg, 191.
Rivière du Gaft, 65.
Roanoke Island, 4.
Rocroft. *See* Rowcroft.
Rodolph II., 7.
Roe, Sir Thomas, 35.
Roman Catholics, 128.
Rosier, James, 7, 8.
Rotterdam, 173, 229.
Rouen, 166.
Rowcroft, Capt. Edward, 26, 27, 28, 29.
Rundall, Thomas, 8.
Ruske, 245.
Russell, Eleanor, 157.
Russell family, 157.
Russell Houfe, 163.
Russell, Lady, 163.
Russell, Sir Maurice, 157.
Russell, Sir Ralph, 157.
Russell, Sir Theobald, 156, 157.
Russell, William, 157.
Russell, Sir William, 156, 157.
Rye, William B., 164.
Rymer's Fœdera, 8, 152.

S.

Saco River, 75.
Sagadahoc River, 14, 15, 28, 65, 125.
Sagamores, 74, 75.
St. Bride's Church, 174.
St. Christopher's, 29.
St. James' Church, 166, 168.
St. John de Porterico, 10.

St. John's Fort, 55.
St. Leger, Sir Anthony, 164.
St. Margaret's Church, 165, 167, 168,
 174.
St. Martin's Church, 164.
St. Patrick's Church, 163.
St. Paul's Church, 96.
St. Sepulchre's Church, 167.
Salisbury Cathedral, 164.
Salisbury Court, 110.
Salisbury, Earl of, 29, 233.
Salmon Falls River, 124.
Sandford, Martyn, 188.
Sandford, Mary, 188.
Sandwich, 199.
Sandys, Sir Edwin, 35.
Sassenow, 14.
Satchfield, William, 150.
Saunders, Mr., 242.
Savage, James, 188.
Savages, 69, 75.
Say and Sele, Viscount, 198.
Scotland, 5, 54, 55, 56, 162.
Sedgemore, 173.
Shakspeare, William, 20, 22, 31.
Shatemuc, 46.
Sheffield, Baron, 47, 64.
Siditon, 154.
Silver, 126, 128.
Skettwarroes, 8, 14.
Slafter, the Rev. Edmund F., 65.
Smith, Capt. John, 75.
Smyth, Elizabeth, 167.
Smyth, Sir Hugh, 167.
Snachenberg, Helen, 164.
Snachenberg, Wolfe, 164.
Socage, tenures in, 127.
Society of Antiquaries, 85.
Sockbigones, 75, 76.
Sokokis, 75.

- Somerford, 174.
 Somerset, 191.
 Somerset, Edward, 32.
 Somerset Militia, 188.
 Somersetshire, 149, 150, 155, 158, 159, 162, 164, 186, 188.
 Somers, Sir George, 12, 13.
 Somers Tracts, 40.
 Southampton, 23, 158, 161.
 Southampton, Earl of, 7, 22, 23, 35, 119, 120, 198.
 South Cheriton, 159.
 Southern Colony, 35, 47.
 Southern Plantation, 30.
 Southwell, Frances, 163.
 Southwell, Mary, 163.
 Spain, 4, 10, 20, 26, 71, 110, 228, 230; the king of, 71.
 Spaniards, 176, 230.
 Spanish, 41.
 Sparchford, Cicely, 164.
 Sparchford, Thomas, 164.
 Speedwell, 47.
 Speke, Dorothy, 166.
 Speke, Sir John, 166.
 Squirrels, 22.
 Stafford, 164.
 Stafford, Edward, 160.
 Stafford, Lord, 163, 164.
 Stallenge, William, 29, 243, 245, 246.
 Star Chamber, the, 197.
 State Papers, 152, 231, 233, 236.
 States-General, 12.
 Stawvert, 235.
 Stepney, 154.
 Stewart, James, 64.
 Stirling, Earl of, 55, 169, 172.
 Stow, John, 94.
 Strachey Papers, 159.
 Strachey, William, 14.
- Strigonium, 7.
 Stuart, Esme, 54.
 Stuart, Lodowick, 54.
 Stuarts, 198.
 Sturminster Marshall, 153, 160.
 Sturtions, 24.
 Suffolk County, 62.
 Sugar, 73.
 Sulphur, 126.
 Summer Islands, 13.
 Sumner, William, 170.
 Surrey, 164.
 Sussex, 168.
 Swampscot, 62.
 Swedes, 170.
 Swiftsure, 164.
 Sydenham, Susannah, 188.
 Sydney Papers, 96, 116.
 Sydney, Sir Philip, 31, 32.
 Sydney, Sir Robert, 116.

T.

- Tadoufac, 45.
 Tahanedo, 14.
 Tamworth, 152.
 Tangier, 200.
 Tar, 73.
 Tarentines, 75, 76.
 Tasquantum, 8.
 Taunton, 188.
 Taxes yielded to favorites, 229.
 Testa de Nevil, 152.
 Thames, 16, 93.
 Theobalds, 31.
 Tickenham, 164.
 Tillières, Comte de, 45.
 Tin, 126.
 Tint, John, 191.
 Tisquantum, 27.

Tour, Eleanor de la, 157.
Tower of London, 44, 53, 59, 111, 163.
Trelawny Papers, 173.
Trelawny, Robert, 187.
Trenchard, Francis, 166.
Tributes to favorites, 229.
Tunny, 245.
Turks, 3, 7, 163.
Tutswell, 166.
Tynte, Edward, 166.

U.

United Netherlands, 12.
United States, 13.
Usher, John, 173, 216, 217, 220.

V.

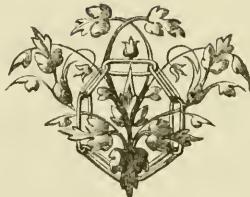
Venables, Col. Robert, 199.
Verrazano, 45.
Vespucci, Amerigo, 71.
Vines, Richard, 18, 19, 58, 187.
Virginia, 4, 12, 13, 22, 26, 28, 29, 31, 35,
46, 61, 73, 177, 201.
Virginia Company, 22, 23, 29, 30, 31,
34, 47, 48.
Virginia, 126.
Vivian, John, 165.

W.

Wadham College, 189.
Wake, Archbishop, 164.
Wake, John, 164.
Walsh, Ann, 164.
Walsh, Sir John, 164.
Walton, Izaak, 199.

Wanape, 23.
Wanstrow, 186.
Wardour, Baron of, 7.
Warner, Mr., 185.
Warner, Sir Thomas, 29.
Warwick, Guy, Earl of, 154.
Warwick, Robert, Earl of, 47, 49, 59,
164.
Warwickshire, 152.
Washington, George, 62.
Watch, 158.
Waymouth, Capt. George, 7, 8.
Wells, 149, 150, 165.
Wendon-Lofts, 168.
West Hampnett, 168.
West Harptrey, 150.
West Indies, 4, 46, 71, 171, 172, 198,
199, 200.
Westminster, 154, 155, 167, 168, 174,
197.
Westminster Hall, 106.
Weston-in-Gordano, 165.
Wheat, 128.
Whitehall, 197, 199, 206, 217, 218,
245.
Whittington, Sir Richard, 33.
Willard, Jofiah, 148.
Willard, Samuel, 148.
Willett, Thomas, 48.
William I., 151.
Willoughby, Lord, 198, 199.
Wilsford, Duke of, 186.
Wiltshire, 161, 174, 186.
Winchester, 158.
Wincob, John, 47.
Windham, 163.
Windfor, 64.
Winford, 150.
Winflow, Edward, 48.
Winter, Admiral, 163.

- Winter, John, 187.
 Winthrop, John, 62, 186, 209.
 Wolfeley, Sir Robert, 148.
 Worcester, 54.
 Worcester, Earl of, 32, 99.
 Worcestershire, 31, 166.
 Wormley, 199.
 Worsley, Richard, 152.
 Wraxall, 150, 152, 158, 161, 162, 164,
 165, 166, 167, 190.
 Wraxall Church, 159.
 Writtle, 151, 167.
 Wrokefhale, 152, 161.
 Wrokefhale. Richard de, 152.
- Wyke, 161.
 Wyke, Agnes de, 159.
- X.
- Ximenes, Francis, 183.
- Y.
- York, Duke of, 159, 160, 170.
 York, England, 154, 156.
 York House, 98.
 York, Maine, 57, 189.
 York Records, 24, 191.
 Yorkshire, 208.

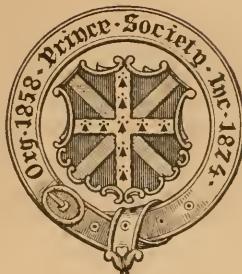


ERRATUM.

Vol. I., page 174, line 5, for "21st March," read "25th March."

10125

Publications of the Prince Society.



SIR FERDINANDO GORGES
AND
HIS PROVINCE OF MAINE.

VOLUME II.

Council of the Prince Society.

1890.

EDMUND F. SLAFTER.

JOHN WARD DEAN.

WILLIAM B. TRASK.

CHARLES H. BELL.

JAMES P. BAXTER.

ROBERT N. TOPPAN.

DAVID GREENE HASKINS, JR.

ELBRIDGE H. GOSS.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 013 983 552 9

